

# Peplink Balance Multi-WAN Bonding Routers

## User Manual

For Models:

ONE/20/30/30 LTE/50/210/310/305/380/580/710/1350/2500

MediaFast200/500

Peplink Balance Firmware 6.1.2

October 2014



Copyright & trademark specifications are subject to change without prior notice. Copyright © 2014 Peplink International Ltd. All Rights Reserved. Peplink and the Peplink logo are trademarks of Peplink International Ltd. Other brands or products mentioned may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION AND SCOPE</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>GLOSSARY</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>PRODUCT COMPARISON CHART</b>	<b>9</b>
3.1	Capacity	9
3.2	Core Functionality	10
3.3	VPN Functionality	11
3.4	WLAN Control	12
3.5	Advanced QoS	13
3.6	Networking Functionality	14
3.7	Device	16
3.8	Hardware	18
<b>4</b>	<b>PRODUCT FEATURES</b>	<b>19</b>
4.1	Supported Network Features	19
4.2	Other Supported Features	21
<b>5</b>	<b>PACKAGE CONTENTS</b>	<b>22</b>
5.1	Peplink Balance One	22
5.2	Peplink Balance 20/30/30 LTE/50	22
5.3	Peplink Balance 210/310	22
5.4	Peplink Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500	22
5.5	Peplink MediaFast 200	22
5.6	Peplink MediaFast 500	22
<b>6</b>	<b>PEPLINK BALANCE OVERVIEW</b>	<b>23</b>
6.1	Peplink Balance One	23
6.2	Peplink Balance 20	25
6.3	Peplink Balance 30	27
6.4	Peplink Balance 30 LTE	29
6.5	Peplink Balance 50	31
6.6	Peplink Balance 210	33
6.7	Peplink Balance 310	35
6.8	Peplink Balance 305	37
6.9	Peplink Balance 380	40
6.10	Peplink Balance 580	43
6.11	Peplink Balance 710	46
6.12	Peplink Balance 1350	49
6.13	Peplink Balance 2500	52

6.14	Peplink MediaFast 500 .....	56
<b>7</b>	<b>INSTALLATION .....</b>	<b>59</b>
7.1	Preparation .....	59
7.2	Constructing the Network .....	59
7.3	Configuring the Network Environment.....	61
<b>8</b>	<b>BASIC CONFIGURATION .....</b>	<b>62</b>
8.1	Connecting to the Web Admin Interface.....	62
8.2	Configuration with the Setup Wizard .....	63
8.3	Advanced Setup.....	67
8.4	Cellular WAN.....	68
<b>9</b>	<b>MEDIAFAST CONFIGURATION.....</b>	<b>74</b>
9.1	Setting Up MediaFast Content Caching.....	74
9.2	Scheduling Content Prefetching.....	75
9.3	Viewing MediaFast Statistics.....	76
<b>10</b>	<b>CONFIGURING THE LAN INTERFACE.....</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>DROP-IN MODE.....</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>CONFIGURING THE WAN INTERFACE(S).....</b>	<b>89</b>
12.1	Connection Method(s) .....	91
12.2	Physical Interface Settings .....	98
12.3	WAN Health Check.....	99
12.4	Bandwidth Allowance Monitor.....	102
12.5	Additional Public IP Settings .....	103
12.6	Dynamic DNS Settings .....	104
<b>13</b>	<b>PEPVPN WITH BANDWIDTH BONDING SPEEDFUSION™ .....</b>	<b>106</b>
13.1	SpeedFusion™ Settings.....	106
13.2	The Peplink Balance Behind a NAT Router .....	113
13.3	SpeedFusion™ Status.....	114
<b>14</b>	<b>IPSEC VPN .....</b>	<b>115</b>
14.1	IPsec VPN Settings .....	115
14.2	IPsec Status.....	118
<b>15</b>	<b>OUTBOUND POLICY MANAGEMENT.....</b>	<b>119</b>
15.1	Outbound Policy.....	120
15.2	Custom Rules for Outbound Policy .....	121
<b>16</b>	<b>INBOUND ACCESS .....</b>	<b>130</b>
16.1	Definition of Port Forwarding.....	130

16.2	Definition of Servers on LAN .....	132
16.3	Inbound Access Services .....	133
16.4	Reverse Lookup Zones.....	149
16.5	DNS Record Import Wizard .....	153
<b>17</b>	<b>NAT MAPPINGS .....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>18</b>	<b>CAPTIVE PORTAL.....</b>	<b>159</b>
<b>19</b>	<b>QOS.....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>20</b>	<b>FIREWALL.....</b>	<b>166</b>
20.1	Outbound and Inbound Firewall Rules.....	166
<b>21</b>	<b>OSPF &amp; RIPV2.....</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>22</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS SETTINGS .....</b>	<b>176</b>
22.1	High Availability .....	176
22.2	PPTP Server .....	180
22.3	Certificate Manager .....	181
22.4	Service Forwarding.....	181
22.5	Service Passthrough .....	183
<b>23</b>	<b>AP .....</b>	<b>185</b>
23.1	AP Controller.....	185
23.2	Wireless SSID .....	186
23.3	Profiles .....	192
23.4	Info .....	196
23.5	Usage.....	197
23.6	AP Status .....	199
23.7	Rogue AP.....	201
23.8	Toolbox.....	201
<b>24</b>	<b>SYSTEM SETTINGS.....</b>	<b>202</b>
24.1	Admin Security .....	202
24.2	Firmware .....	206
24.3	Time.....	208
24.4	Email Notification .....	209
24.5	Event Log .....	211
24.6	SNMP.....	212
24.7	InControl .....	214
24.8	Configuration.....	215
24.9	Feature Add-ons .....	216
24.10	Reboot .....	216

<b>25 TOOLS</b>	<b>217</b>
25.1 Ping	217
25.2 Traceroute Test	218
25.3 PepVPN Test	218
25.4 PepVPN Analyzer	219
25.5 CLI (Command Line Interface Support)	220
<b>26 STATUS</b>	<b>221</b>
26.1 Device	221
26.2 Active Sessions	223
26.3 Client List	225
26.4 WINS Client	225
26.5 SpeedFusion™ Status	226
26.6 OSPF & RIPv2	227
26.7 Event Log	227
26.8 Bandwidth	228
<b>APPENDIX A. RESTORATION OF FACTORY DEFAULTS</b>	<b>233</b>
<b>APPENDIX B. ROUTING UNDER DHCP, STATIC IP, AND PPPOE</b>	<b>234</b>
B.1 Routing Via Network Address Translation (NAT)	234
B.2 Routing Via IP Forwarding	235
<b>APPENDIX C. CASE STUDIES</b>	<b>236</b>
C.1 Performance Optimization	236
C.2 Maintaining the Same IP Address Throughout a Session	240
C.3 Bypassing the Firewall to Access Hosts on LAN	241
C.4 Inbound Access Restriction	242
C.5 Outbound Access Restriction	243
<b>APPENDIX D. TROUBLESHOOTING</b>	<b>244</b>
<b>APPENDIX E. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS</b>	<b>246</b>
E.1 Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, and 50	246
E.2 Peplink Balance 210 and 310	247
E.3 Peplink Balance 380	248
E.4 Peplink Balance 305	249
E.5 Peplink Balance 380	250
E.6 Peplink Balance 580	251
E.7 Peplink Balance 710	252
E.8 Peplink Balance 1350	253
E.9 Peplink Balance 2500	254
E.10 Peplink MediaFast 200/500	255

APPENDIX F. DECLARATION.....256

# 1 Introduction and Scope

The Peplink Balance series provides link aggregation and load balancing across up to thirteen WAN connections.

The Peplink Balance series offers cost-effective solutions suitable for SOHO/power users and small businesses. The Balance lineup also features a range of advanced enterprise solutions. Peplink enterprise routers are ideal single-box solutions for medium to large business environments, and they allow service providers to enable highly available multi-network services.

The Peplink MediaFast series downloads and buffers video, audio, iTunes/iTunes U, HTTP, and other content for uninterrupted learning and fun anytime.

This manual applies to the following Peplink Balance products:

- Peplink Balance 20/30 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 30 LTE (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 50 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 210/310 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 380 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 580 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 710 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 1350 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink Balance 2500 (firmware version v6.1.x)
- Peplink MediaFast200/500 (firmware version v6.1.x)

The manual covers setting up your Peplink Balance or MediaFast and provides a collection of case studies detailing the advanced features of the Peplink Balance.

## Important Note to Users Upgrading from Firmware 4.7 or below

If your current firmware version is 4.7 or below, please upgrade to Firmware 4.8.2 before upgrading to Firmware 6.1.

## Important Note to Users of the Peplink Balance 30 (Classic Edition)

Firmware 5.0 or above is NOT applicable to the Peplink Balance 30 (Classic Edition). For more information on identifying the generation of your Peplink Balance 30, please visit our knowledge base at <http://www.peplink.com/index.php?view=faq&id=231&path=16>.

## 2 Glossary

The following terms, acronyms, and abbreviations are frequently used in this manual:

Term	Definition
3G	3rd generation standards for wireless communications (e.g.,
4G	4th generation standards for wireless communications (e.g.,
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
EVDO	Evolution-Data Optimized
FQDN	Fully Qualified Domain Name
HSDPA	High-Speed Downlink Packet Access
HTTP	Hyper-Text Transfer Protocol
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IP	Internet Protocol
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC Address	Media Access Control Address
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
MSS	Maximum Segment Size
NAT	Network Address Translation
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet
QoS	Quality of Service
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
WAN	Wide Area Network
WINS	Windows Internet Name Service
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network
210+	Refers to Peplink Balance 210/310/380/580/710/1350/2500
380+	Refers to Peplink Balance 380/580/710/1350/2500

### 3 Product Comparison Chart

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>Capacity</b>											
WAN Ports (GbE)/Internet Links	2/3/5	2	2	3	3	5	7	13	12	2 <sup>1</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup>
USB WAN Modem Port	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Embedded LTE Modem	X	1	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Recommended Users	1-25	1-25	1-50	1-50	50-500	300-1000	500-2000+	1000-5000+	5000-20000+	1-50	300-1000
Router Throughput	100M	100M	100M	100M	200M	400M	800M	1500M	8Gbps	80<	250M

<sup>1</sup>MediaFast 200 has WAN 1 activated. To activate WAN 2, a Load Balancing or SpeedFusion license is required. MediaFast 500-B WAN ports 1-5 are active by default. Load balancing or SpeedFusion license is required to activate MediaFast 500-A WAN ports 2-5.

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A500- B
<b>Core Functionality</b>											
Load Balancing & Failover	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Load Balancing Algorithms	5	5	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7
• Weighted	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Enforced	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Persistence	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Priority	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Overflow	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Least Used	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
• Lowest Latency	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Drop-In Mode	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Inbound Load Balancing	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
4G/3G Modem Support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scheduled Content Caching	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>VPN Functionality</b>											
SpeedFusion™	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SpeedFusion™ Peers	X	X	2	2	20	50	300	800	4000	2	2/50
Bonded VPN Throughput	X	X	30M	30M	60M	80M	150M	350M	2Gbps	X	X
PPTP VPN Server	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Recommended PPTP VPN Users	3	3	15	15	50	100	200	500	1000	15	100
RADIUS / LDAP Support for PPTP	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
IPsec VPN (Network-to-Network)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Number of IPsec Tunnels	2	2	2	2	20	50	150	400	800	2	50
Certificate Manager	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>WLAN Control</b>											
Manage Pepwave AP One	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Access Point Configuration	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
AP Profiles	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
AP Firmware Update	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Number of APs Supported	X	X	X	X	50*	100*	250*	500*	Yes	10/50	10/100

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>Advanced QoS</b>											
Bandwidth Usage Monitor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
QoS for VoIP and Ecommerce	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DSL/Cable Optimization	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Application Prioritization	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Application Prioritization by User Group	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
User Group Bandwidth Reservation	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Individual Bandwidth Limit	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>Networking Functionality</b>											
NAT and IP Forwarding	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Static Routes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Port Forwarding	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Forwarding Server Definition	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Many-to-One, One-to-One NAT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
NAT Pool	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SIP ALG, H.323 ALG	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
UPnP, NAT-PMP	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
WINS Server	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Dynamic DNS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Web Blocking	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DNS Proxy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DNS Record Delegation	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DNS Record Import	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Wizard											
Reverse Lookup Zones	Yes										
Inter-VLAN Routing	Yes										
DHCP Relay	Yes										
BOOTP Support	Yes										
Inbound Access Services	Yes										
Outbound Policy Management	Yes										
OSPF and RIPv2 Support	Yes										
Service/SMTP/Web Proxy/DNS Forwarding	Yes										
Service Passthrough	Yes										
Ping/Traceroute Test	Yes										
PepVPN Test/Analyzer	X	X	Yes								
CLI Support	X	X	Yes								

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>Device</b>											
Web Administrative Interface	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Admin/User Access Levels	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Active Client List	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Active Session List	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
WINS Client List	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bandwidth Allowance Monitor	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Web Reporting Services	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Email Notification	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Syslog	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SNMP v1,	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

v2c and v3											
InControl	Yes										
WAN Health Check	Yes										
Captive Portal	Yes										
Firewall	Yes										
Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention	Yes										
High Availability	X	X	Yes	X	X						

	20/30/50	30 LTE	210	310	380	580	710	1350	2500	MediaFast 200	MediaFast 500-A 500-B
<b>Hardware</b>											
LAN Ports (GbE)	4	4	7	7	1	1	1	1	8/ 2(10GbE SFP+)	8	3
Power Input	9V-16V DC	9V-16V DC	12V-24V AC DC	12V-24V AC DC	100V to 240V AC	100V to 240V AC	12V-48V DC	100V to 240V AC			
Power Consumption	15W	15W	15W	15W	50W	50W	70W	70W	230W	38W	50W
1U Rackmount	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	X	Yes
High Availability	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	X	Yes
LAN Bypass	X	X	X	X	X	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	X	Yes
Dimensions (H x W x D)	3.5 x 26 x 13.3cm	4.4 x 29.3 x 15.9cm	1U x 27.3cm	1U x 27.8cm	1U x 37.9cm	1U x 39.8cm	1U x 55cm	29.2 x 17.7 x 5cm	1U x 27.8cm		
Weight	1.0kg	1.0kg	1.2kg	1.2kg	3.5kg	5.5kg	5.5kg	6.5kg	12kg	1.9kg	5.5kg

## 4 Product Features

Peplink Balance series products enable all LAN users to share broadband Internet connections and provide advanced features to enhance Internet access. The following is a list of supported features:

### 4.1 Supported Network Features

#### 4.1.1 WAN

- Multiple public IP support (DHCP, PPPoE, static IP address)
- Static IP support for PPPoE
- 10/100/1000Mbps Ethernet connection in full/half duplex
- Built-in HSPA and EVDO cellular modems (**available on Peplink Balance 30 LTE**)
- USB mobile connection (**only one USB modem can be connected at a time**)
- Drop-in mode on selectable WAN port with MAC address passthrough (**available on Peplink Balance 210+**)
- Network address translation (NAT) / port address translation (PAT)
- Inbound and outbound NAT mapping
- Multiple static IP addresses per WAN connection
- MAC address clone
- Customizable MTU and MSS values
- WAN connection health check
- Dynamic DNS (supported service providers: changeip.com, dyndns.org, no-ip.org, tzo.com, and DNS-O-Matic)
- Ping, DNS lookup, and HTTP-based health check

#### 4.1.2 LAN

- DHCP server on LAN
- Extended DHCP option support
- Static routing rules
- Local DNS proxy server
- VLAN on LAN support

#### 4.1.3 VPN

- Secure SpeedFusion™ (**available on Peplink Balance 210+**)
- SpeedFusion performance analyzer
- X.509 certificate support (**feature activation required on Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, and 50; included on Peplink Balance 210+**)
- Bandwidth bonding and failover among selected WAN connections
- Ability to route traffic to a remote VPN peer

- Optional pre-shared key setting
- Layer 2 bridging
- SpeedFusion™ throughput, ping, and traceroute tests
- Built-in PPTP VPN server
- Authenticate PPTP clients using RADIUS and LDAP servers (**available on Peplink Balance 210+**)
- IPsec VPN for network-to-network connections (works with Cisco and Juniper only)
- PPTP and IPsec passthrough

#### 4.1.4 Inbound Traffic Management

- TCP/UDP traffic redirection to dedicated LAN server(s)
- Inbound link load balancing by means of DNS (**available on Peplink Balance 210+**)

#### 4.1.5 Outbound Policy

- Link load distribution per TCP/UDP service
- Persistent routing for specified source and/or destination IP addresses per TCP/UDP service
- Prioritize and route traffic to VPN tunnels with Priority and Enforced algorithms

#### 4.1.6 AP Controller

- Configure and manage Pepwave AP devices
- Review the status of connected AP

#### 4.1.7 QoS (available on Peplink Balance 210+)

- Quality of service for different applications and custom protocols
- User group classification for different service levels (**available on Peplink Balance 380+**)
- Bandwidth usage control and monitoring on group- and user-level (**available on Peplink Balance 380+**)
- Application prioritization for custom protocols and DSL optimization

#### 4.1.8 Firewall

- Outbound (LAN to WAN) firewall rules
- Inbound (WAN to LAN) firewall rules per WAN connection
- Intrusion detection and prevention
- Specification of NAT mappings
- Web blocking (**available on Peplink Balance 380+**)
- Outbound firewall rules can be defined by destination domain name

#### 4.1.9 Captive Portal

- Splash screen of open networks, login page for secure networks
- Customizable built-in captive portal
- Supports linking to outside page for captive portal

#### 4.2 Other Supported Features

- Easy-to-use web administration interface
- HTTP and HTTPS support for web administration interface
- Configurable web administration port and administrator password
- Read-only user for web admin
- Shared-IP drop-in mode **(available on the Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, and 50 upon feature activation; available on Peplink Balance 210+)**
- Authentication and accounting by RADIUS server for web admin **(available on Peplink Balance 210+)**
- Firmware upgrades, configuration backups, ping, and traceroute via web administration interface
- Remote web-based configuration (via WAN and LAN interfaces)
- Remote reporting to Peplink Balance reporting server
- Hardware high availability via VRRP, with automatic configuration synchronization**(available on Peplink Balance 210+)**
- Real-time, hourly, daily and monthly bandwidth usage reports and charts
- Hardware backup via LAN bypass **(available on Peplink Balance 580, 710, 1350, and 2500)**
- Built-in WINS server
- Time server synchronization
- SNMP
- Email notification
- Syslog
- SIP passthrough
- PPTP packet passthrough
- Active sessions
- Active client list
- WINS client list
- UPnP / NAT-PMP
- Improved active sessions page
- Event log is persistent across reboots
- IPv6 support
- Support USB tethering on Android 2.2+ phones

## **5 Package Contents**

The contents of Peplink Balance product packages are as follows:

### **5.1 Peplink Balance One**

- Peplink Balance One
- Power adapter
- Information slip

### **5.2 Peplink Balance 20/30/30 LTE/50**

- Peplink Balance 20/30/30 LTE/50
- Power adapter
- Information slip

### **5.3 Peplink Balance 210/310**

- Peplink Balance 210/310
- Power adapter
- Information slip
- Rackmount kit

### **5.4 Peplink Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500**

- Peplink Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500
- Power cord
- Information slip
- Rackmount kit

### **5.5 Peplink MediaFast 200**

- Peplink MediaFast 200
- Power adapter
- Information slip

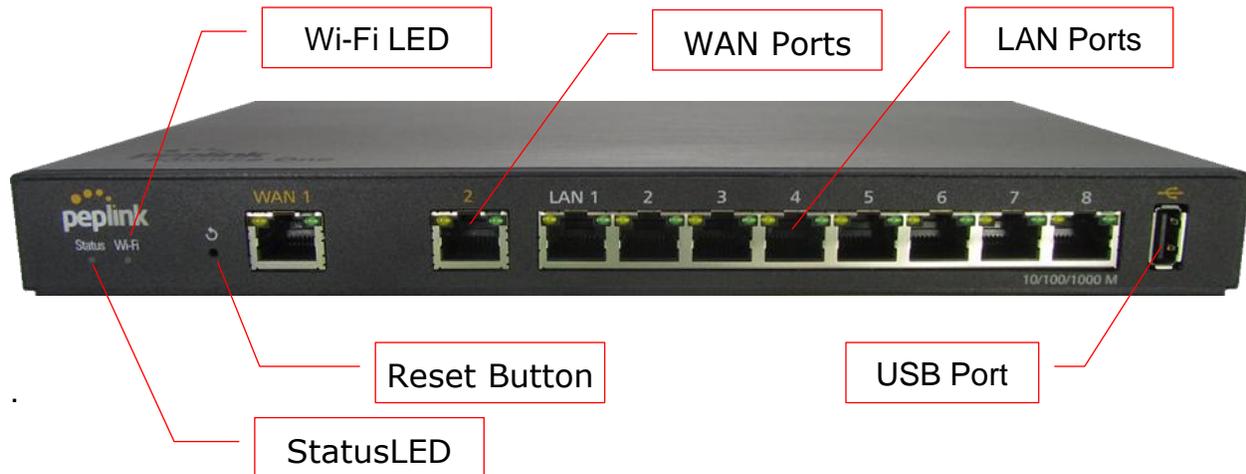
### **5.6 Peplink MediaFast 500**

- Peplink MediaFast 500
- Power cord
- Information slip
- Rackmount kit

## 6 Peplink Balance Overview

### 6.1 Peplink Balance One

#### 6.1.1 Front Panel Appearance



#### 6.1.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Wi-Fi</b>	OFF – Wi-Fi is off
	Green – Ready
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

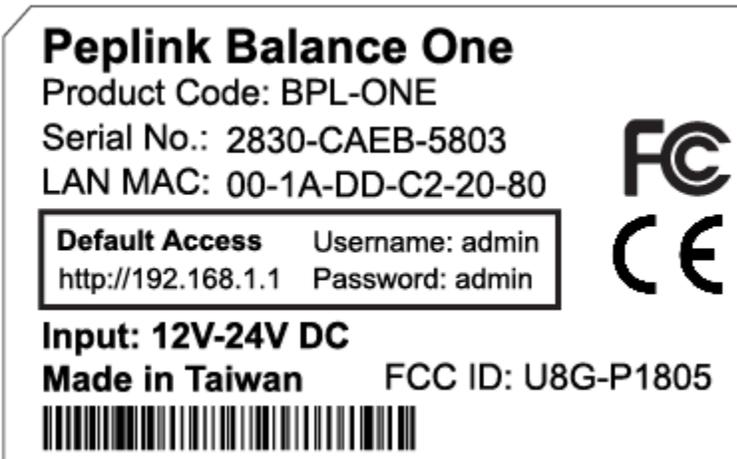
LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For future functionality

### 6.1.3 Rear Panel Appearance

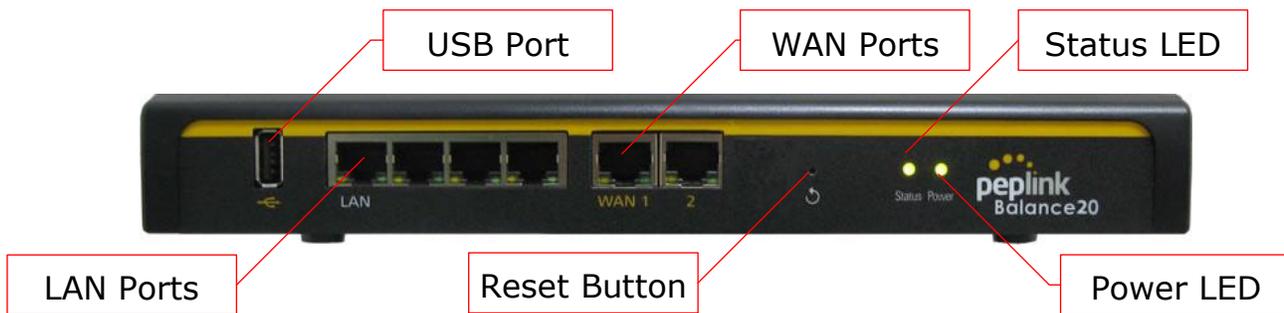


### 6.1.4 Product Label



## 6.2 Peplink Balance 20

### 6.2.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.2.2 LED Indicators

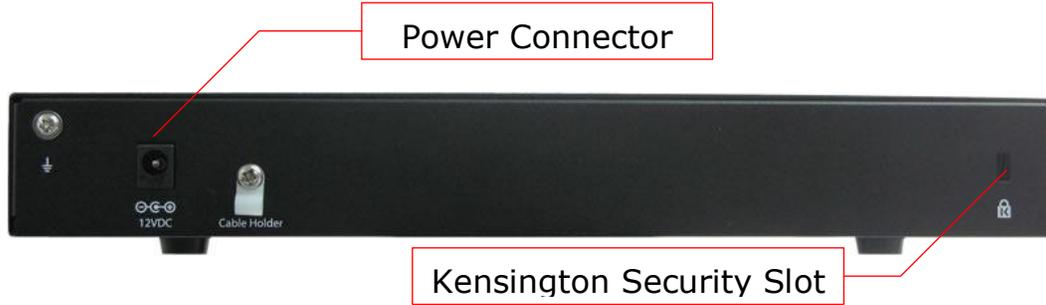
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

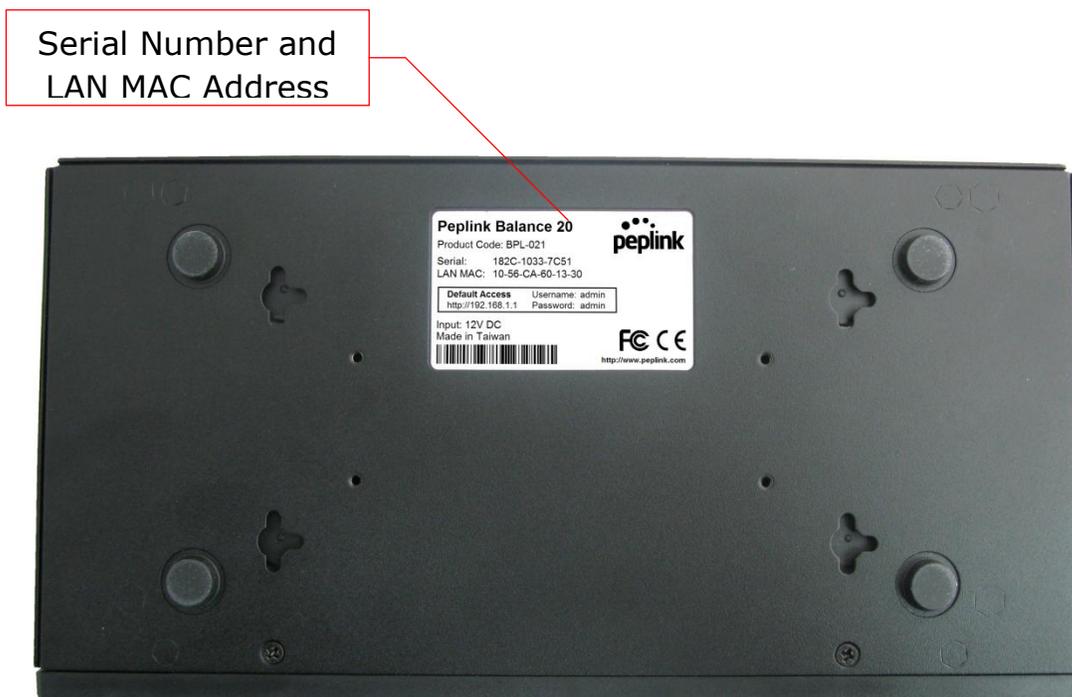
LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.2.3 Rear Panel Appearance

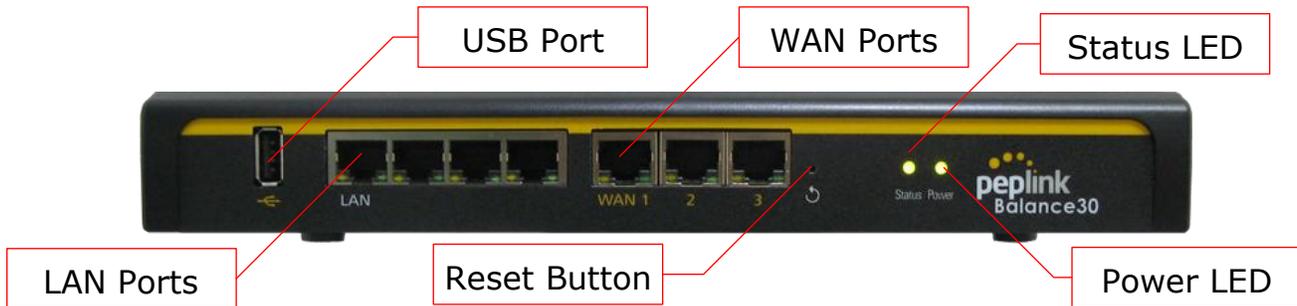


### 6.2.4 Unit Base Appearance



## 6.3 Peplink Balance 30

### 6.3.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.3.2 LED Indicators

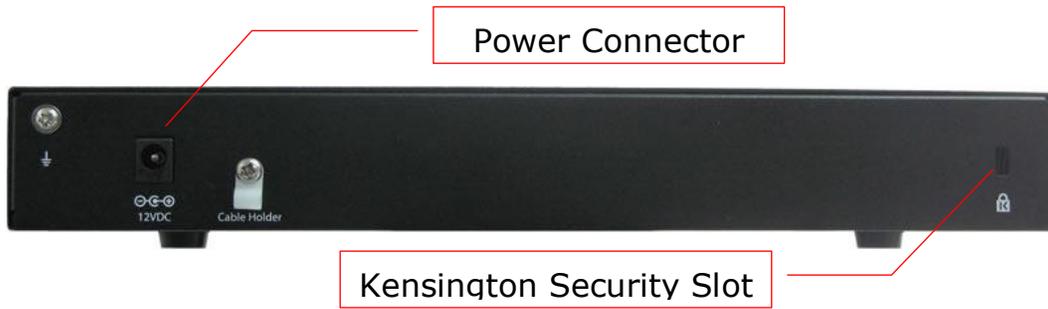
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 /1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.3.3 Rear Panel Appearance

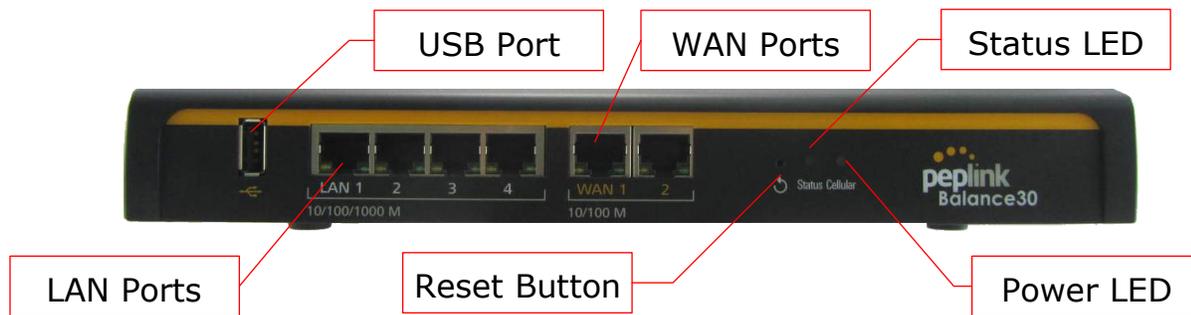


### 6.3.4 Unit Base Appearance



## 6.4 Peplink Balance 30 LTE

### 6.4.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.4.2 LED Indicators

The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

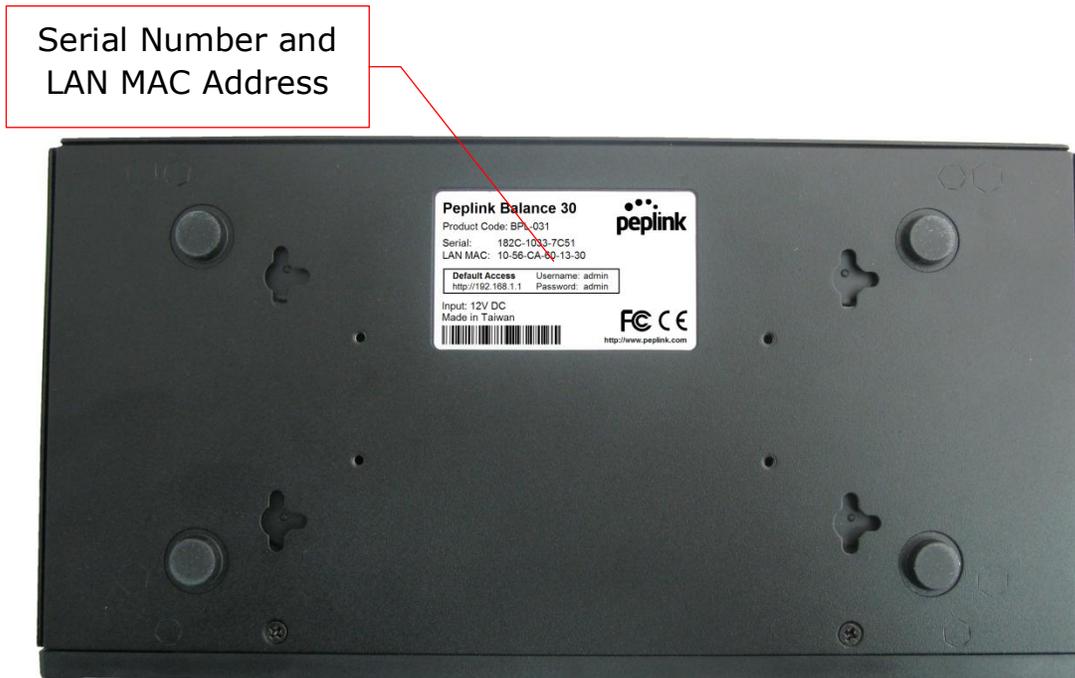
LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 /1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.4.3 Rear Panel Appearance

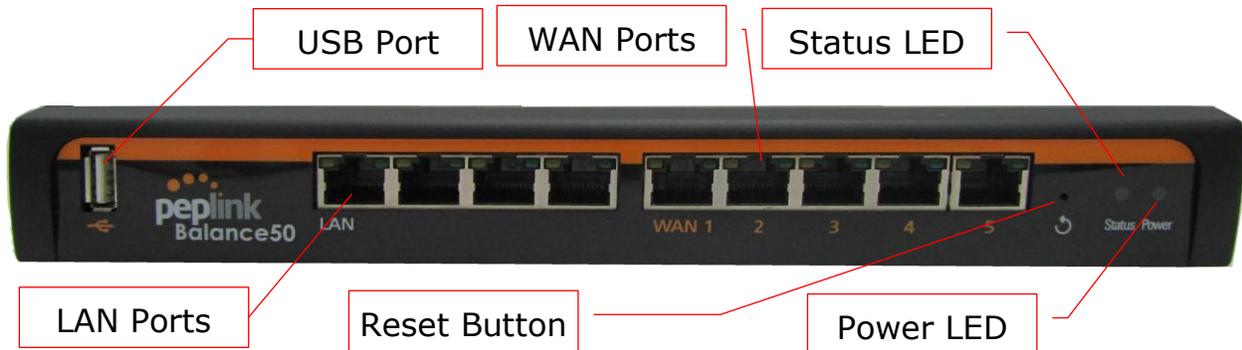


### 6.4.4 Unit Base Appearance



## 6.5 Peplink Balance 50

### 6.5.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.5.2 LED Indicators

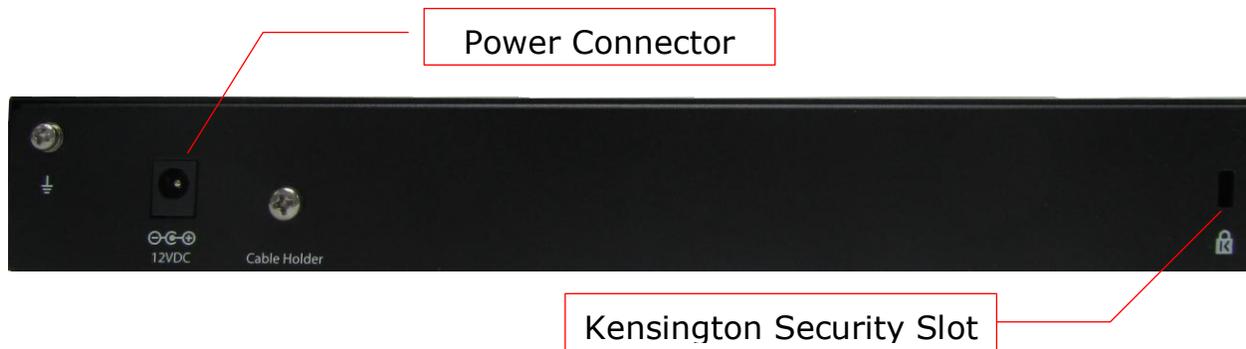
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power</b>	OFF – Power off
	Green – Power on
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 /1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

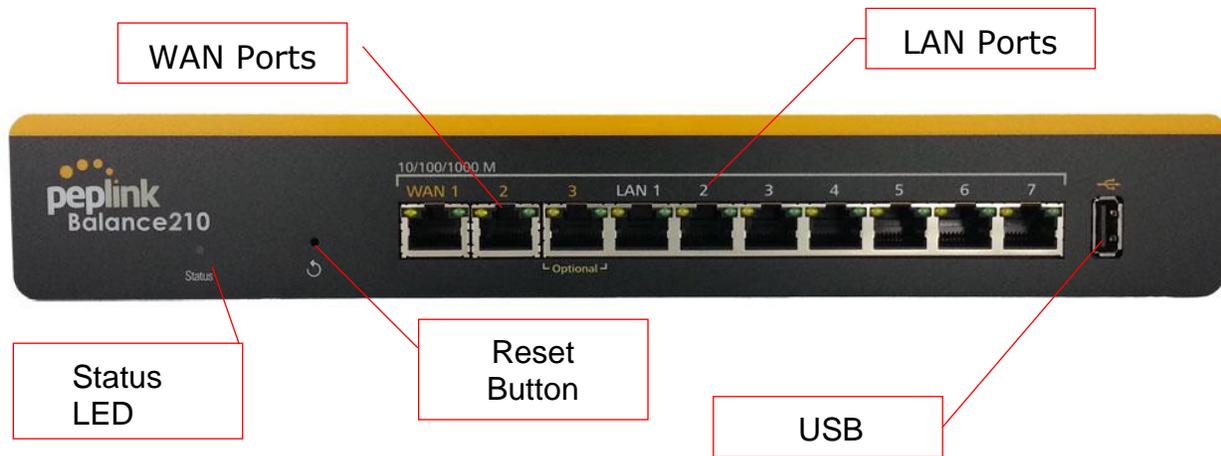
USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.5.3 Rear Panel Appearance



## 6.6 Peplink Balance 210

### 6.6.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.6.2 LED Indicators

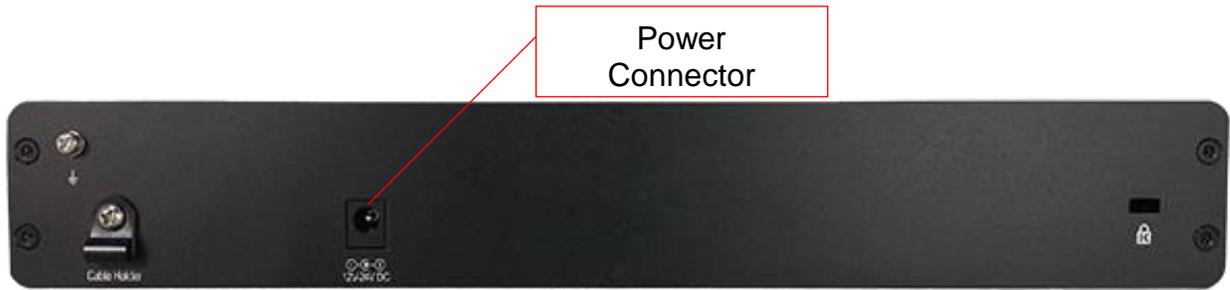
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.6.3 Rear Panel Appearance

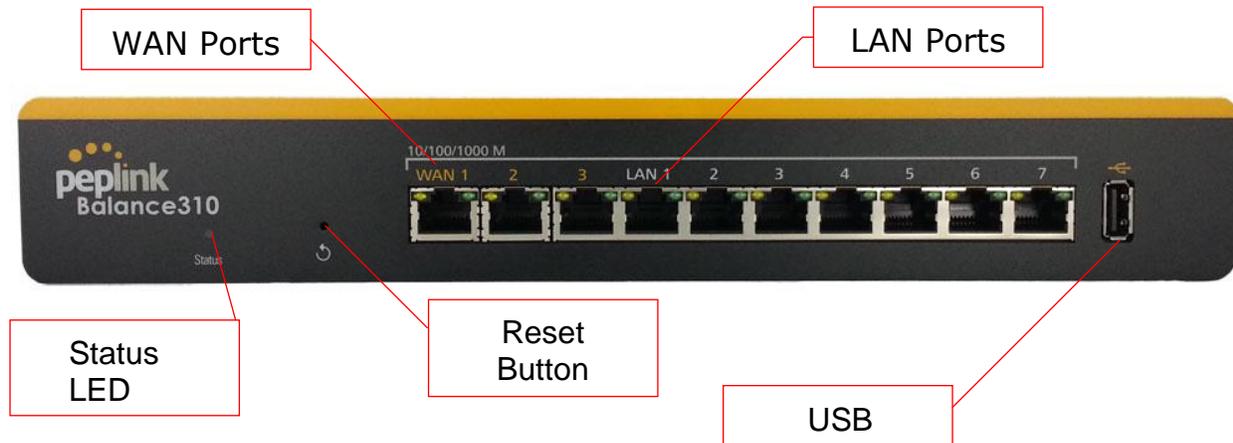


### 6.6.4 Unit Base Appearance



## 6.7 Peplink Balance 310

### 6.7.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.7.2 LED Indicators

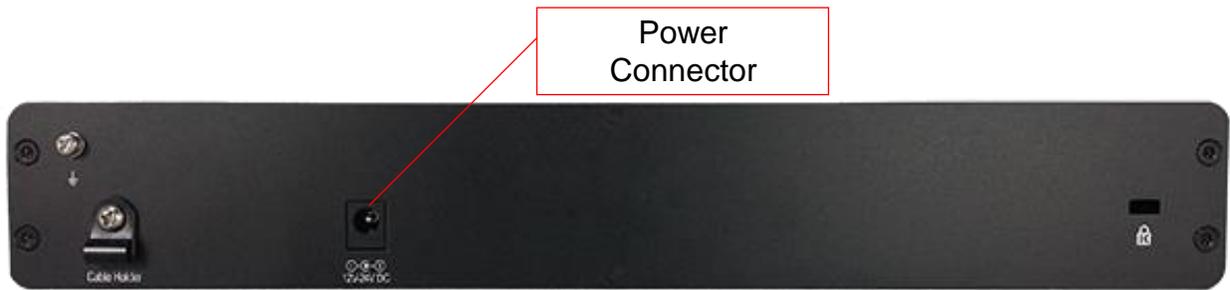
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Status</b>	OFF – Upgrading firmware
	Red – Booting up or busy
	Blinking red – Boot up error
	Green – Ready

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 10 / 100 / 1000 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – No data is being transferred or port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

USB Port	
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.7.3 Rear Panel Appearance

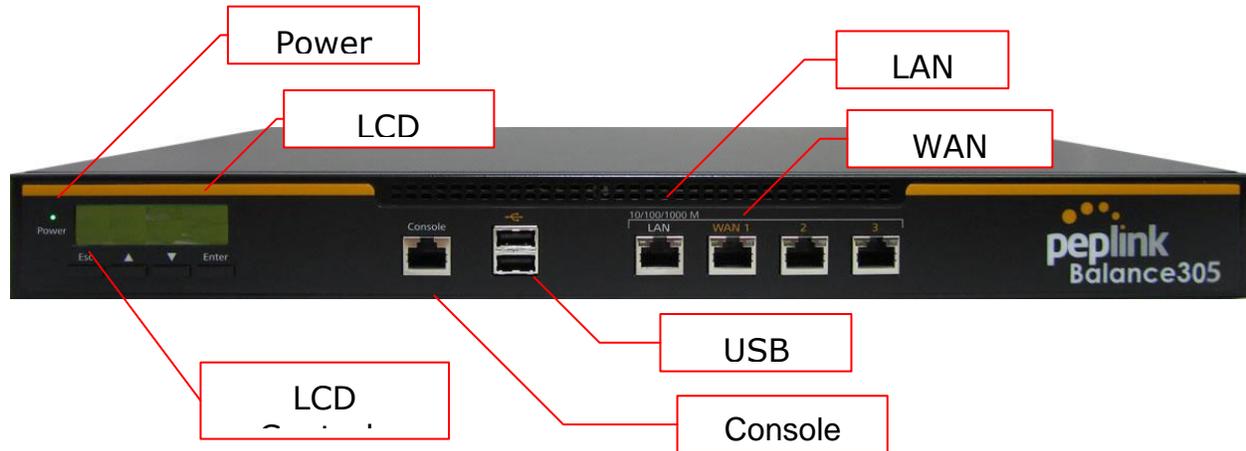


### 6.7.4 Unit Base Appearance



## 6.8 Peplink Balance 305

### 6.8.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.8.2 LED Indicators

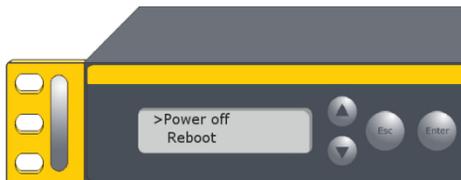
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 3 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

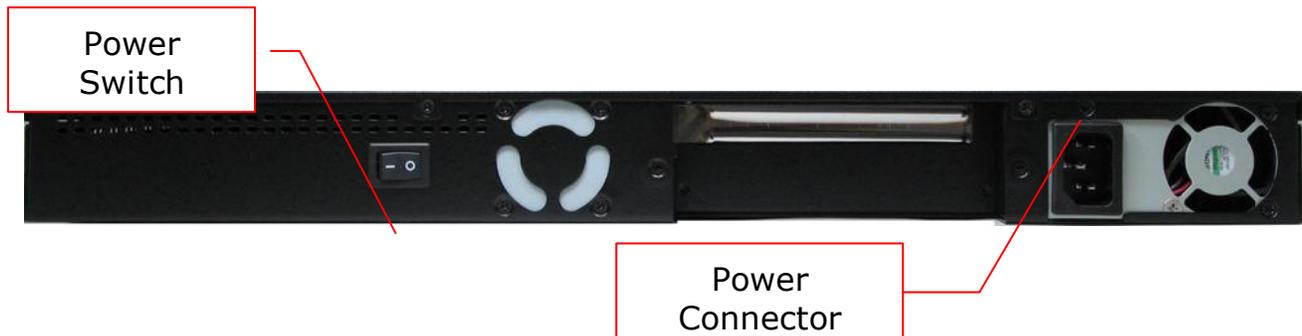
Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.8.3 LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
    - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - > VPN Profile 1
    - > VPN Profile 2
    - > ...
    - > VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
    - > Throughput in
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > WAN3
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > WAN3
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot > Reboot? (Yes/No) (to reboot the unit)
  - > Factory default > Factory default? (Yes/No) (to restore factory defaults)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3

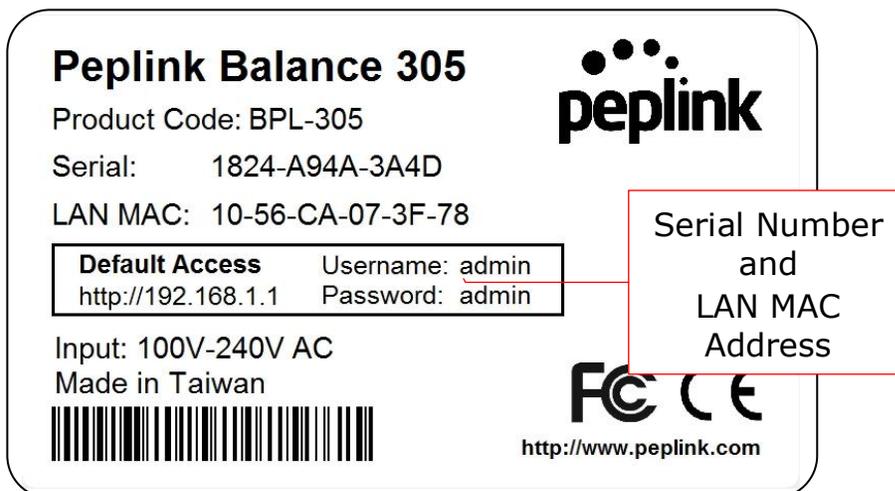
### 6.8.4 Rear Panel Appearance



Connector Ports	
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 110/220V

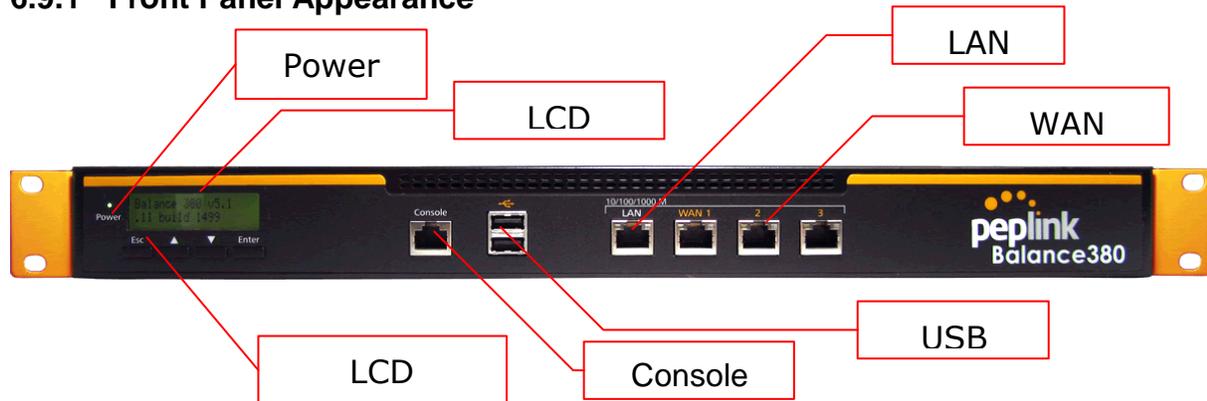
Switch	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit

### 6.8.5 Unit Label Appearance



## 6.9 Peplink Balance 380

### 6.9.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.9.2 LED Indicators

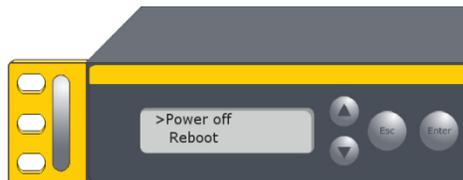
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 3 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

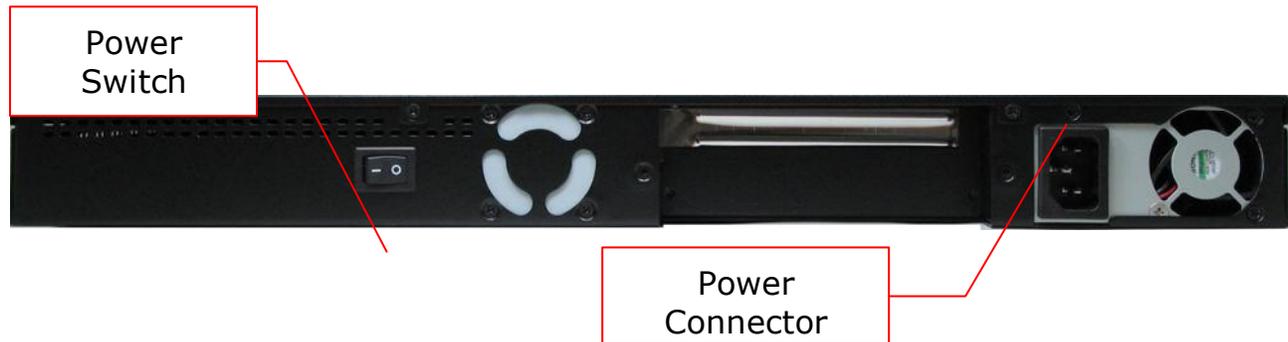
Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.9.3 LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
  - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - > VPN Profile 1
    - > VPN Profile 2
    - > ...
    - > VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > WAN3
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > WAN3
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot (to reboot the unit)
    - > Reboot? (Yes/No)
  - > Factory default (to restore factory defaults)
    - > Factory default? (Yes/No)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > WAN3

### 6.9.4 Rear Panel Appearance



Connector Ports	
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 110/220V

Switch	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit.

### 6.9.5 Unit Label Appearance

**Peplink Balance 380**

Product Code: BPL-380

Serial: 1824-6144-F2A7

LAN MAC: 10-56-CA-03-DF-30

<b>Default Access</b>	Username: admin
http://192.168.1.1	Password: admin

Made in Taiwan

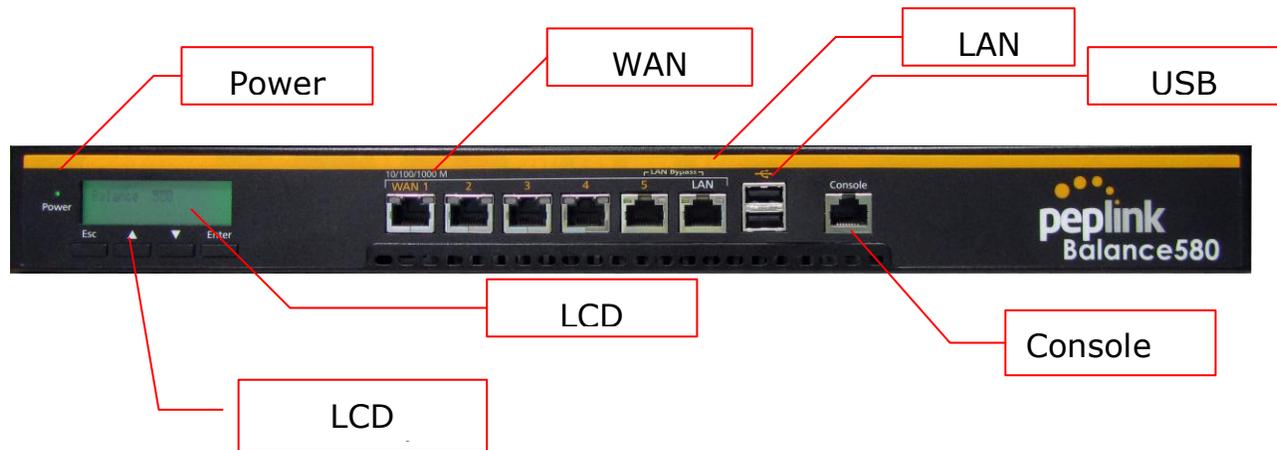


  
  
<http://www.peplink.com>

Serial Number and LAN MAC Address

## 6.10 Peplink Balance 580

### 6.10.1 Front Panel Appearance



### 6.10.2 LED Indicators

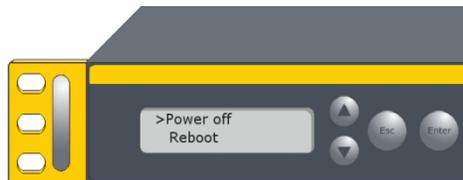
The statuses indicated by the front panel LEDs are as follows:

Power and Status Indicators	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

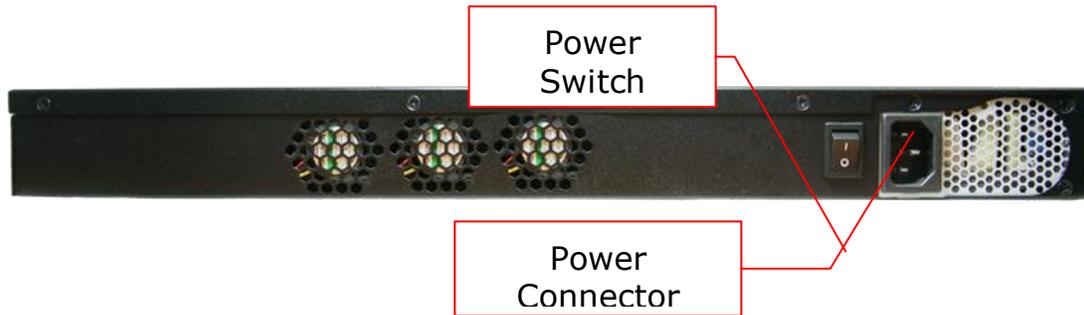
Console and USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.10.3 LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
  - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - >WAN5
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - >VPN Profile 1
    - >VPN Profile 2
    - > ...
    - >VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - >WAN5
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - >WAN5
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - >WAN5
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot (to reboot the unit)
    - > Reboot? (Yes/No)
  - > Factory default (to restore factory defaults)
    - > Factory default? (Yes/No)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - >WAN5

### 6.10.4 Rear Panel Appearance



Connector Ports	
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 110/220V

Switch	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit.

### 6.10.5 Unit Label Appearance

**Peplink Balance 580**

Product Code: BPL-580

Serial: 1824-61DE-6B04

LAN MAC: 10-56-CA-03-E6-68

<b>Default Access</b>	Username: admin
http://192.168.1.1	Password: admin

Made in Taiwan



**peplink**

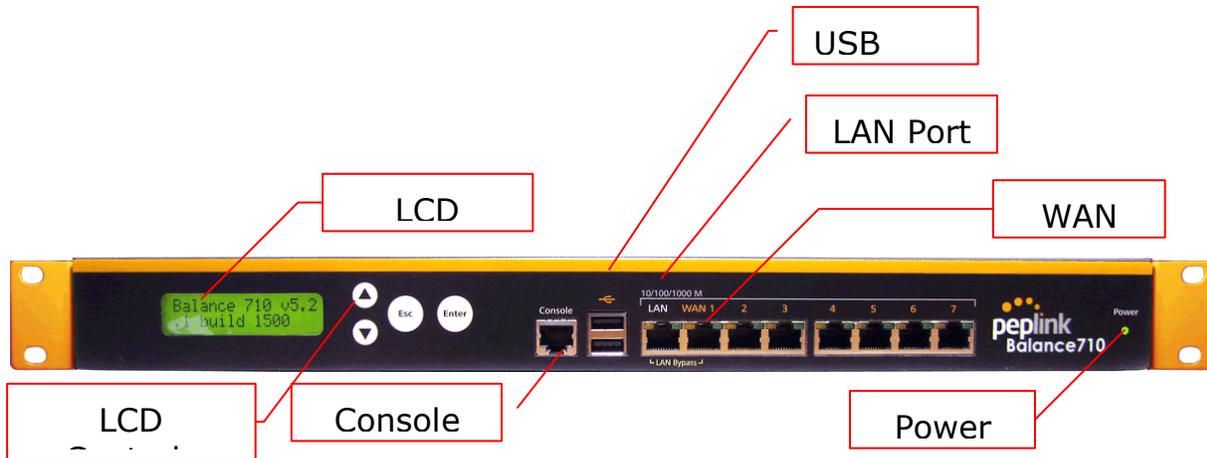
Serial Number and LAN MAC Address

**FC CE**

<http://www.peplink.com>

## 6.11 Peplink Balance 710

### 6.11.1 Front Panel Appearance



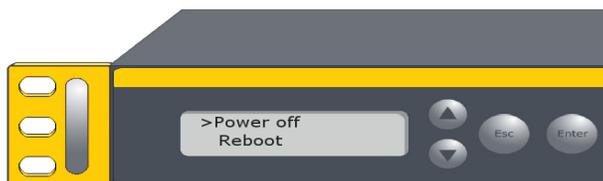
Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 7Ports	
<b>Green LED</b>	ON – 1000 Mbps
	OFF – 100/10 Mbps
<b>Orange LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

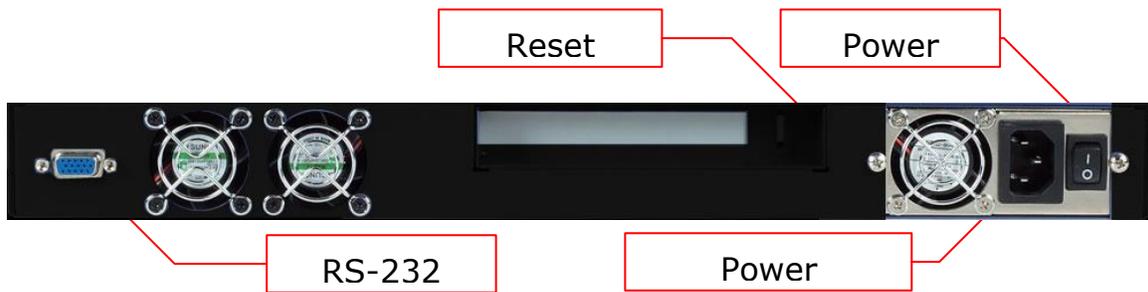
Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
    - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN7
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - > VPN Profile 1
    - > VPN Profile 2
    - > ...
    - > VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN7
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN7
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN7
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot (to reboot the unit)
    - > Reboot? (Yes/No)
  - > Factory default (to restore factory defaults)
    - > Factory default? (Yes/No)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN7

### 6.11.2 Rear Panel Appearance



Connector Ports	
<b>RS-232 Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 110/220V

Switches	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit.
<b>Reset Switch</b>	Press and release once to reset the system.

### 6.11.3 Unit Label Appearance

**Peplink Balance 710**  
 Product Code: BPL-710  
 Serial: 182C-1033-7C51  
 LAN MAC: 10-56-CA-60-13-30

**Default Access**    Username: admin  
 http://192.168.1.1    Password: admin

Made in Taiwan

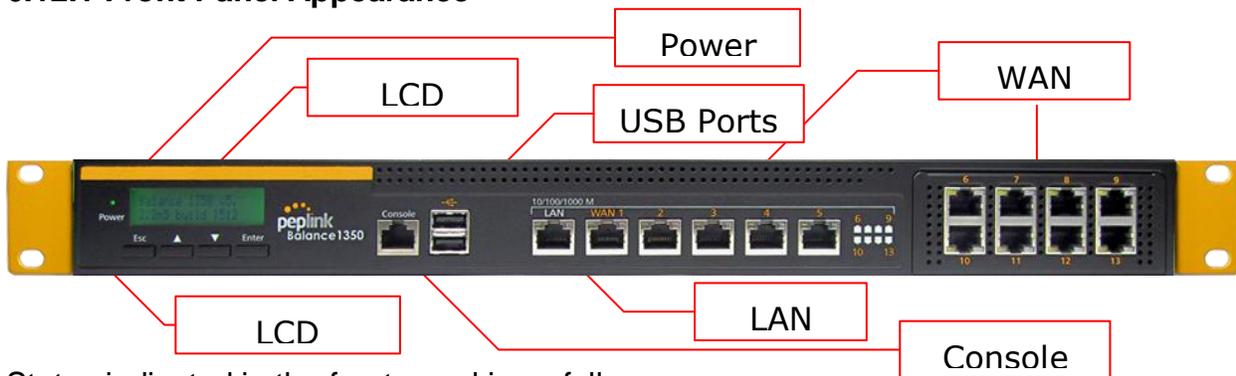


  
  
<http://www.peplink.com>

Serial Number  
and  
LAN MAC  
Address

## 6.12 Peplink Balance 1350

### 6.12.1 Front Panel Appearance



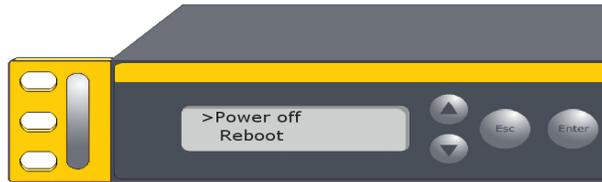
Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN Port, WAN 1 – 13 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

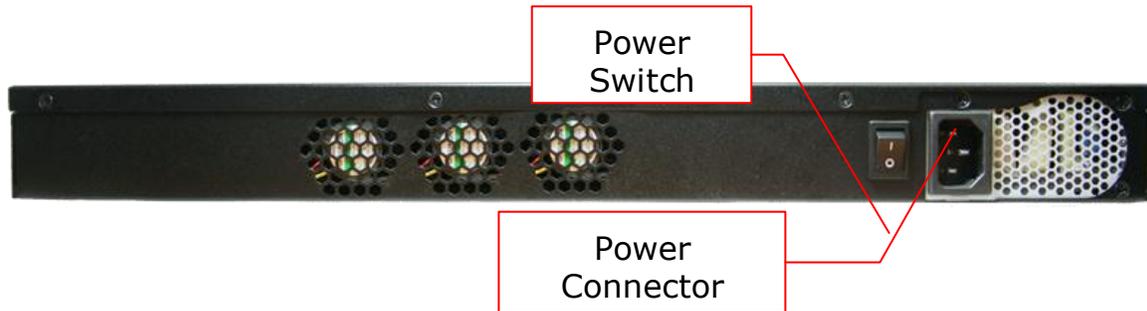
Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

## 6.12.2 LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
    - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN13
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - > VPN Profile 1
    - > VPN Profile 2
    - > ...
    - > VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN13
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN13
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN13
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot (to reboot the unit)
  - > Factory default > Factory default? (Yes/No) (to restore factory defaults)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN13

### 6.12.3 Rear Panel Appearance



Connector Ports	
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 110/220V

Switches	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit.

### 6.12.4 Unit Label Appearance

**Peplink Balance 1350**

Product Code: BPL-135

Serial: 182C-1065-2932

LAN MAC: 10-56-CA-60-16-50

<b>Default Access</b>	Username: admin
http://192.168.1.1	Password: admin

Made in Taiwan



**peplink**

**FC CE**

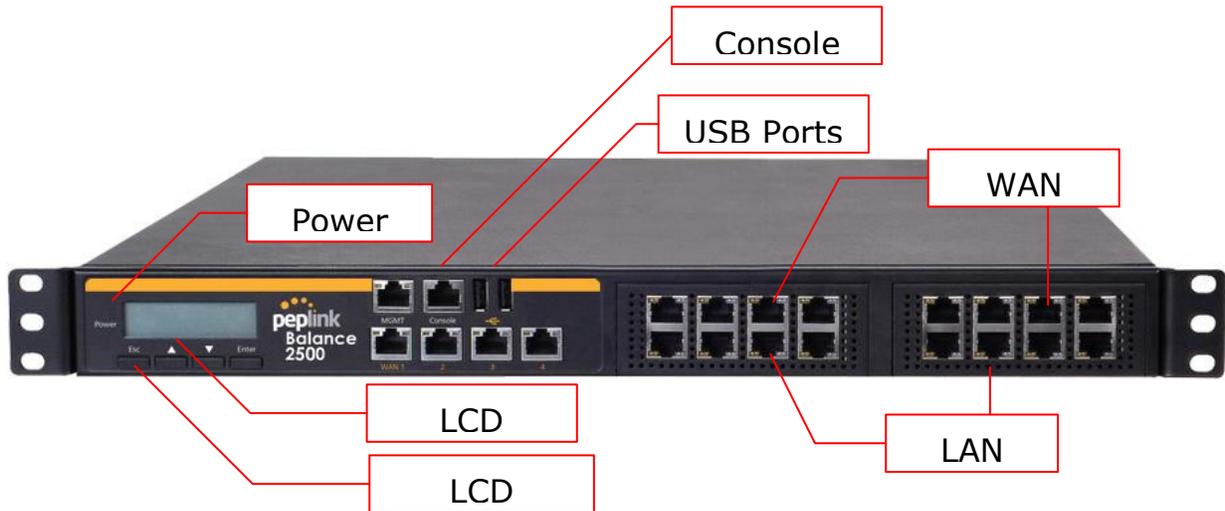
http://www.peplink.com

Serial Number and LAN MAC Address

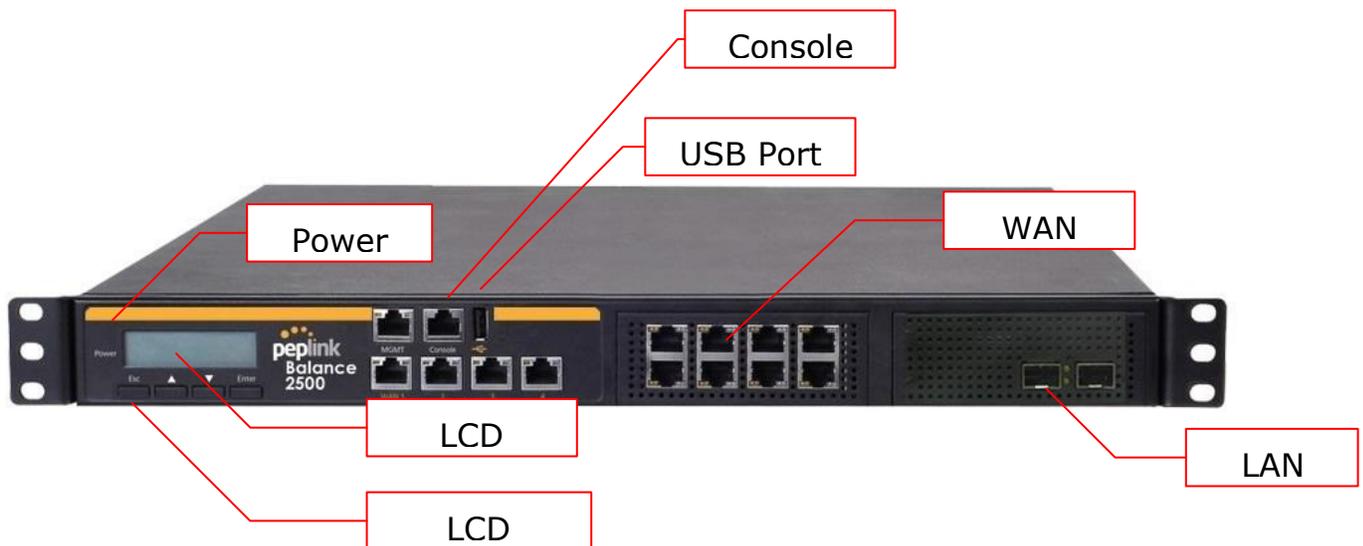
## 6.13 Peplink Balance 2500

### 6.13.1 Front Panel Appearance

#### BPL-2500



#### BPL-2500-SFP



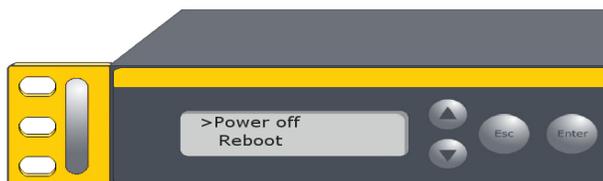
Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN and WAN Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

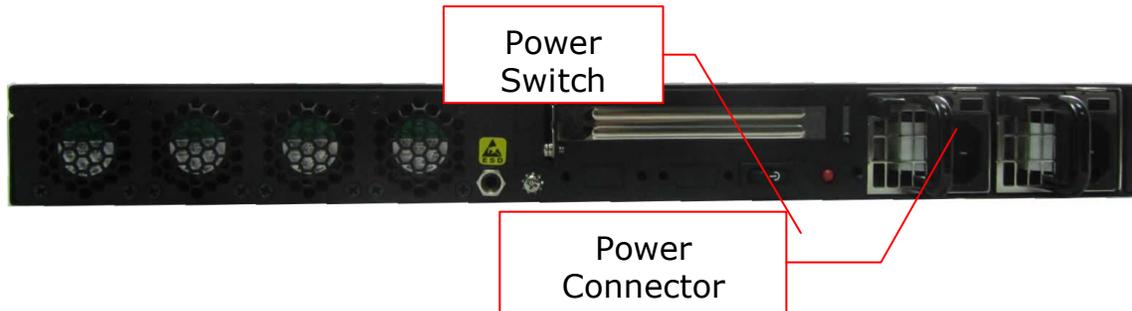
Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting a 4G/3G USB modem

### 6.13.2 LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - >LAN IP
    - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status (shows Connected/Disconnected, IP address list)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN13
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - >VPN Profile 1
    - >VPN Profile 2
    - >...
    - >VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN13
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN13
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN13
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot (to reboot the unit)
    - > Reboot? (Yes/No)
  - > Factory default (to restore factory defaults)
    - > Factory default? (Yes/No)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD,1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN13

### 6.13.3 Rear Panel Appearance

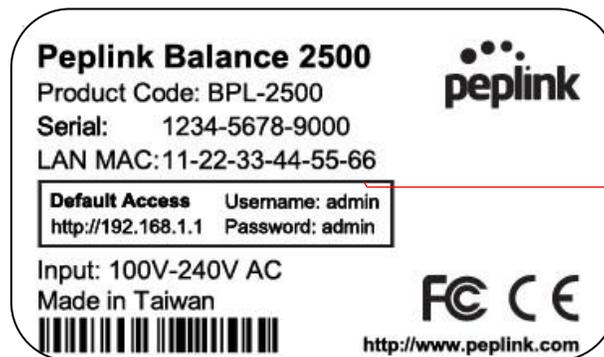


Connector Ports	
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 100-240V

Switches	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit.

### 6.13.4 Unit Label Appearance

**BPL-2500**



Serial Number  
and  
LAN MAC  
Address

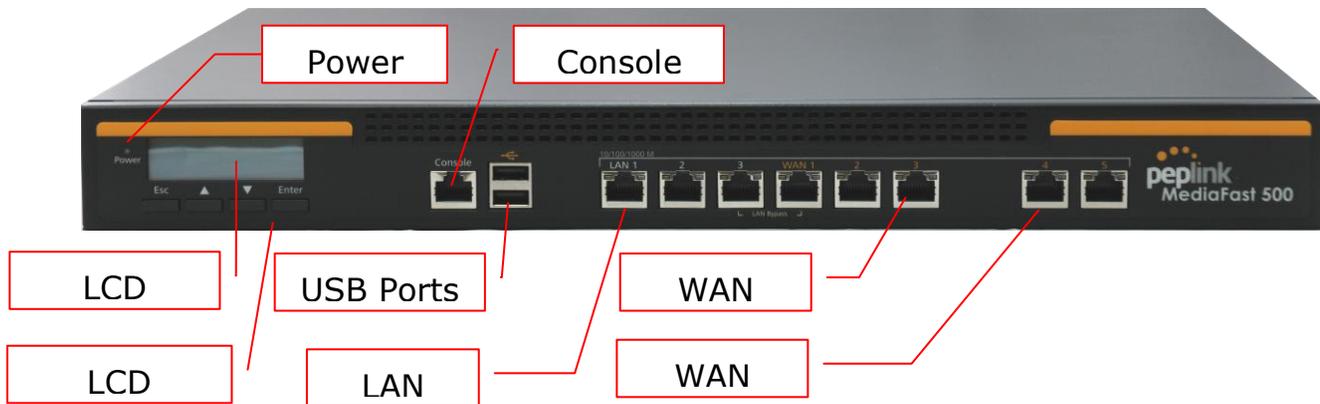
**BPL-2500-SFP**



Serial Number  
and  
LAN MAC  
Address

## 6.14 Peplink MediaFast 500

### 6.14.1 Front Panel Appearance



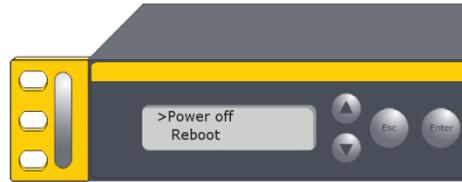
Status indicated in the front panel is as follows:

LED Indicator	
<b>Power LED</b>	OFF – Power off
	GREEN – Power on

LAN 1-3 Ports, WAN 1-5 Ports	
<b>Right LED</b>	ORANGE – 1000 Mbps
	GREEN – 100 Mbps
	OFF – 10 Mbps
<b>Left LED</b>	Solid – Port is connected without traffic
	Blinking – Data is transferring
	OFF – Port is not connected
<b>Port Type</b>	Auto MDI/MDI-X ports

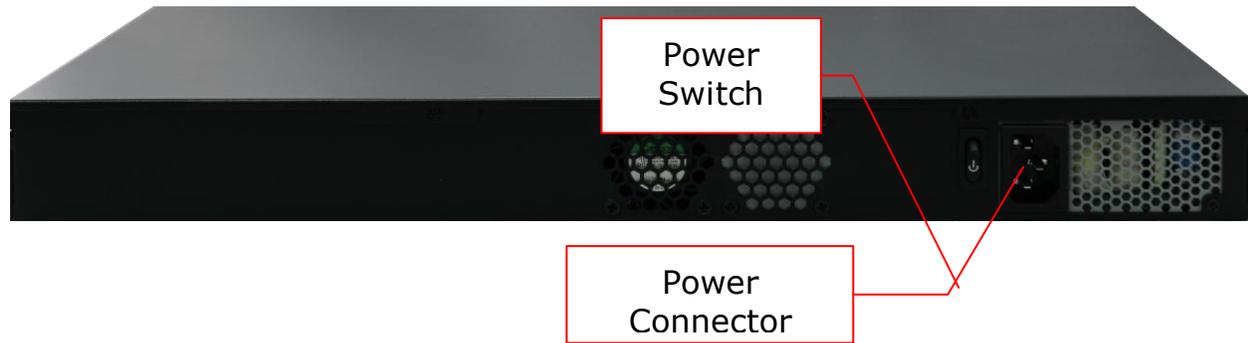
Console & USB Ports	
<b>Console Port</b>	Reserved for engineering use
<b>USB Ports</b>	For connecting 4G/3G USB modems

### 6.14.2 LCD Display Menu



- > HA State: Master/Slave
  - > LAN IP
  - > VIP
- > System Status
  - > System
    - > Firmware ver. (shows firmware version)
    - > Serial number (shows serial number)
    - > System time (shows current time)
    - > System up time (shows system uptime since last reboot)
    - > CPU load (shows current CPU loading, 0-100%)
    - > LAN
      - > Status (shows LAN port physical status)
      - > IP address (shows LAN IP address)
      - > Subnet mask (shows LAN subnet mask)
  - > Link status
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN5
  - > VPN status (shows Connected/Disconnected)
    - > VPN Profile 1
    - > VPN Profile 2
    - > ...
    - > VPN Profile n
  - > Link usage
    - > Throughput in (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN5
    - > Throughput out (shows transfer rate in Kbps)
      - > WAN1
      - > WAN2
      - > ...
      - > WAN5
  - > Data Transfer'd (shows volume transferred since last reboot in MB)
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN5
- > Maintenance
  - > Reboot > Reboot? (Yes/No) (to reboot the unit)
  - > Factory default > Factory default? (Yes/No) (to restore factory defaults)
- > LAN config
  - > Port speed (shows port speed: Auto, 10baseT-FD, 10baseT-HD, 100baseTx-FD, 100baseTx-HD, 1000baseTx-FD)
    - > LAN
    - > WAN1
    - > WAN2
    - > ...
    - > WAN5

### 6.14.3 Rear Panel Appearance



Connector Ports	
<b>Power Connector</b>	AC input 100-240V

Switches	
<b>Power Switch</b>	Pressing and holding the key for 4 seconds will power down the unit. When the unit is powered off, pressing this switch will power on the unit.

## 7 Installation

The following section details connecting the Peplink Balance to your network:

### 7.1 Preparation

Before installing your Peplink Balance, please prepare the following:

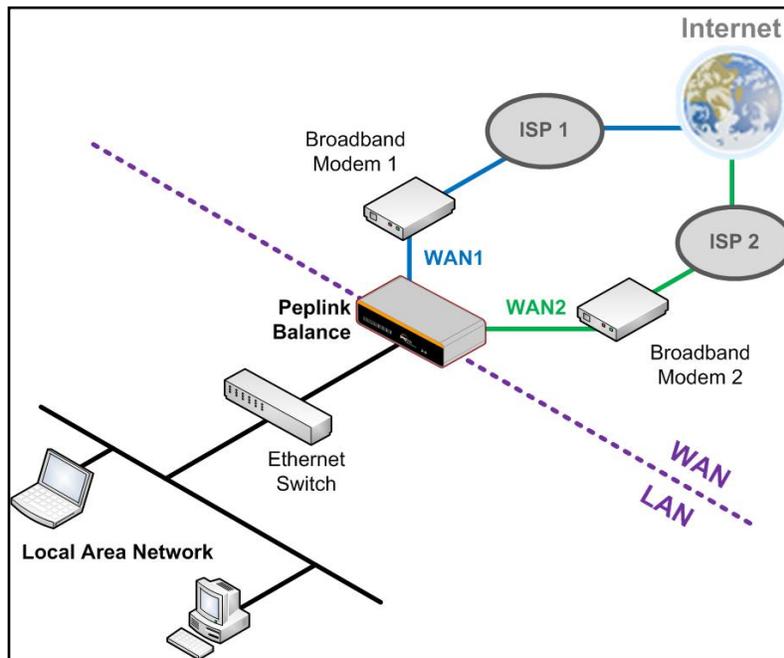
- At least one Internet/WAN access account
- For each network connection, one 10/100BaseT UTP cable with RJ45 connector, or one 1000BaseT Cat5E UTP cable for the Gigabit port on the Balance 580/710/1350/2500, or one USB modem for the USB WAN port on the Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500/MediaFast
- A computer with the TCP/IP network protocol and a web browser installed. Supported browsers include Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0 and above, Mozilla Firefox 10.0 and above, Apple Safari 5.1 and above, and Google Chrome 18 and above.

### 7.2 Constructing the Network

At the high level, construct the network according to the following steps:

1. With an Ethernet cable, connect a computer to one of the LAN ports on the Peplink Balance. For the Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, 50, 210, and 310, repeat with different cables for up to 4 computers to be connected.
2. With another Ethernet cable, connect the WAN/broadband modem to one of the WAN ports on the Peplink Balance. Repeat using different cables to connect from 2 to 13 WAN/broadband connections (Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, 50, 210, 310, 305, 380, 580, 710, 1350, 2500, and MediaFast) or connect a USB modem to the USB WAN port (Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, 50, 380, 580, 710, 1350, 2500, and MediaFast).
3. For the Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, 50, 210, and 310, connect the provided power adapter to the power connector on the Peplink Balance, and then plug the power adapter into a power outlet. For the Peplink Balance 305, 380, 580, 710, 1350, 2500, and MediaFast, connect the provided power cord to the AC power connector on the Peplink Balance, and then plug the power cord into a power outlet.

The following figure schematically illustrates the resulting configuration:



### **7.3 Configuring the Network Environment**

To ensure that your Peplink Balance works properly in the LAN environment and can access the Internet via the WAN connections, please refer to the following setup procedures:

- LAN configuration  
For basic configuration, refer to **Section 8, Basic Configuration**.
- For advanced configuration, refer to **Section 10, Configuring the LAN Interfaces(s)**.
- WAN configuration  
For basic configuration, refer to **Section 8, Basic Configuration**.  
For advanced configuration, refer to **Section 12, Configuring the WAN Interface(s)**.
- MediaFast configuration  
For MediaFast configuration, refer to **Section 9, MediaFast Configuration**.

## 8 Basic Configuration

### 8.1 Connecting to the Web Admin Interface

1. Start a web browser on a computer that is connected with the Peplink Balance through the LAN.
2. To connect to the web admin of the Peplink Balance, enter the following LAN IP address in the address field of the web browser:

http://192.168.1.1

(This is the default LAN IP address of the Peplink Balance.)

3. Enter the following to access the web admin interface.

**User Name:** admin

**Password:** admin

(This is the default admin userlogin of the Peplink Balance. The admin and read-only user password can be changed at **System>Admin Security**.)



4. After successful login, the **Dashboard** of the web admin interface will be displayed. It looks similar to the following:

3G		
IP Address: 17.219.22.1 <a href="#">Details...</a>	Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected	<a href="#">Disconnect</a>
Wi-Fi		
IP Address: 18.220.23.1 <a href="#">Details...</a>	Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected	<a href="#">Disconnect</a>
FBB		
IP Address: 19.221.24.1 <a href="#">Details...</a>	Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected	<a href="#">Disconnect</a>
WAN4		
IP Address: 123.203.209.47 <a href="#">Details...</a>	Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected	<a href="#">Disconnect</a>
WAN5		
IP Address: 14.136.11.100 <a href="#">Details...</a>	Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected	<a href="#">Disconnect</a>
WAN6		
IP Address: 213.141.82.11 <a href="#">Details...</a>	Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected	<a href="#">Disconnect</a>
USB		
IP Address: (none)	Status: No Device Detected	
LAN Interface		
Router IP Address: 192.168.1.1		
PepVPN with SpeedFusion™ <span style="float: right;">Status</span>		
SDT	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Established	
TPTtest		
AP Controller Information <span style="float: right;">Status</span>		
Access Point: 0 (Online: 0) Connected Clients: 0		
Device Information		
Model:	Peplink Balance 710	
Firmware:	6.1.0 build 2863	
Uptime:	38 days 22 hours 17 minutes	
CPU Load:	<div style="width: 5%;"><div style="width: 5%;"></div></div> 5%	
Throughput:	↓ 0.0 Mbps ↑ 0.0 Mbps	

### Important Note

The **Save** button causes the changes to be saved. Configuration changes (e.g., WAN, LAN, admin settings, etc.) take effect after clicking the **Apply Changes** button on each page's top-right corner.

## 8.2 Configuration with the Setup Wizard

The Setup Wizard simplifies the task of configuring WAN connection(s) by guiding the configuration process step-by-step.

To begin, click **Setup Wizard** after connecting to the web admin interface.



Click **Next>>** to begin.

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 1

Welcome to Setup Wizard!

The Setup Wizard will guide you through the WAN port(s) configuration step by step. This wizard is designed to simplify the process in configuring your device and connecting it to the Internet.

Click *Next* to begin.

Select **Yes** if you want to set up drop-in mode using the Setup Wizard (note: drop-in mode is available on the Peplink Balance 210+ and MediaFast 200+).

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 2

Drop-in Mode	
Do you want to setup drop-in mode?	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Which WAN port do you want to enable drop-in mode?	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"><span>WAN 1 ▾</span><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>WAN 1</li><li>WAN 2</li><li>WAN 3</li><li>WAN 4</li><li>WAN 5</li><li>WAN 6</li><li>WAN 7</li></ul></div>

Click on the appropriate checkbox(es) to select the WAN connection(s) to be configured. If you have chosen to configure drop-in mode using the Setup Wizard, the WAN port to be configured in drop-in mode will be checked by default.

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 3

Choose the WAN port(s) to be configured.

WAN Ports <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
WAN 1 (Drop-in)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN 2	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 3	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 5	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 6	<input type="checkbox"/>
WAN 7	<input type="checkbox"/>
Mobile Internet	<input type="checkbox"/>

If drop-in mode is going to be configured, the setup wizard will move on to **Drop-in Settings**.

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 4

Enter the parameters of Drop-in Settings for WAN 1.

Drop-in Settings	
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▼
Default Gateway	<input type="text"/>
DNS Servers	DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>
Upload Bandwidth	1000 <input type="text"/> Mbps ▼
Download Bandwidth	1000 <input type="text"/> Mbps ▼

If you are not using drop-in mode, select the connection method for the WAN connection(s) from the following screen:

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 4

Choose a connection method for WAN 1.

Connection Method	
Method	Select
Static IP	<input type="radio"/>
DHCP	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
PPPoE	<input type="radio"/>
Disable	<input type="radio"/>

Depending on the selection of connection type, further configuration may be needed. For example, PPPoE and static IP require additional settings for the selected WAN port. Please refer to **Section 12, Configuring the WAN Interface(s)** for details on setting up DHCP, static IP, and PPPoE.

If **Mobile Internet Connection** is checked, the setup wizard will move on to **Operator Settings**.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 3

Select whether Operator Settings for Mobile Internet will be automatically detected or customized.

Operator Settings (for HSPA/EDGE/GPRS only)	
Settings	Select
Auto	<input type="radio"/>
Custom	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

If **Custom Mobile Operator Settings** is selected, APN parameters are required. Some service providers may charge a fee for connecting to a different APN. Please consult your service provider for the correct settings.

Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 4

Enter the parameters of Mobile Operator Settings for Mobile Internet.

Mobile Operator Settings	
APN	<input type="text"/>
Login ID	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
Dial Number	<input type="text"/>

Click on the appropriate check box(es) to select the preferred WAN connection(s). Connection(s) not selected in this step will be used as backup only. Click **Next>>** to continue.

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 5

Choose the preferred WAN Port(s) that is to be used as primary connection. The port(s) not selected in this step will only be used when none of the connection of the preferred port is up.

Preferred WAN Port Selection	
Port	Preferred
WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Mobile Internet	<input type="checkbox"/>

Choose the time zone of your country/region. Check the box **Show all** to display all time zone options.

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Step 6

Choose time zone of your Country / Region.

Time Zone Settings	
Time Zone	(GMT+07:00) Krasnoyarsk
	<input type="checkbox"/> Show all

Check in the following screen to make sure all settings have been configured correctly, and then click **Save Settings** to confirm.

### Setup Wizard > WAN Setup > Final Step

Confirm the WAN connection(s) configuration below. Click *Back* to modify the configuration settings in previous steps. Click *Save Settings* when you are done.

Summary of WAN Port(s) Configuration	
WAN 1	
Connection Method	Drop-in Static IP
IP Address	192.22.22.1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.22.22.1
DNS Server	192.22.22.1
Upload Bandwidth	1000 Mbps
Download Bandwidth	1000 Mbps
Preferred WAN Port(s)	
Ports	WAN 1 WAN 2
Time Zone Settings	

<< Back

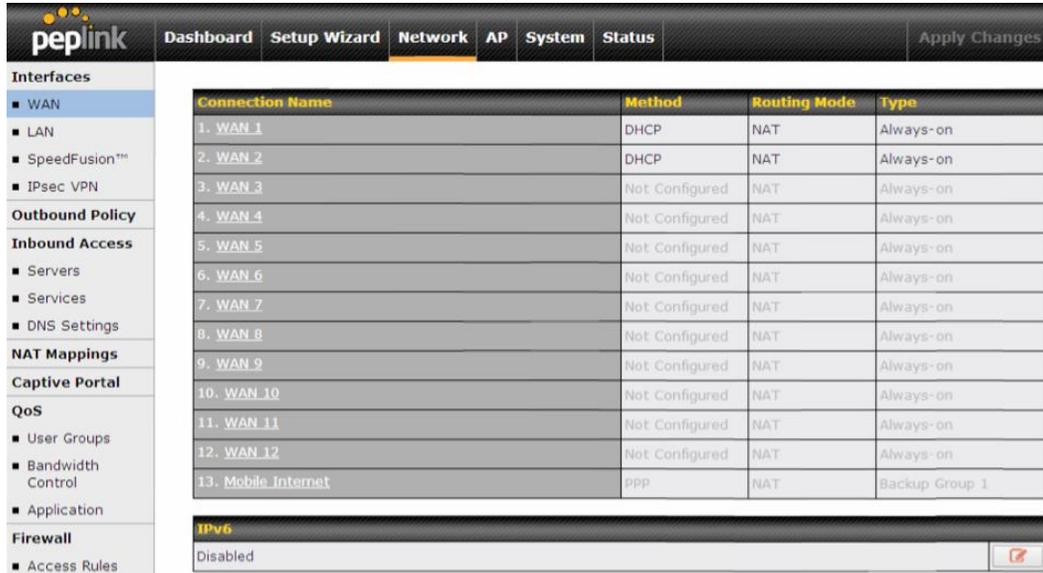
Save Settings

Cancel

After finishing the last step in the setup wizard, click **Apply Changes** on the page header to allow the configuration changes to take effect.

### 8.3 Advanced Setup

Advanced settings can be configured from the **Network** menu. WAN connections can be configured by entering the corresponding WAN connection information at **Network>Interfaces>WAN**.



Connection Name	Method	Routing Mode	Type
1. WAN_1	DHCP	NAT	Always-on
2. WAN_2	DHCP	NAT	Always-on
3. WAN_3	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
4. WAN_4	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
5. WAN_5	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
6. WAN_6	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
7. WAN_7	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
8. WAN_8	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
9. WAN_9	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
10. WAN_10	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
11. WAN_11	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
12. WAN_12	Not Configured	NAT	Always-on
13. Mobile_Internet	PPP	NAT	Backup Group 1

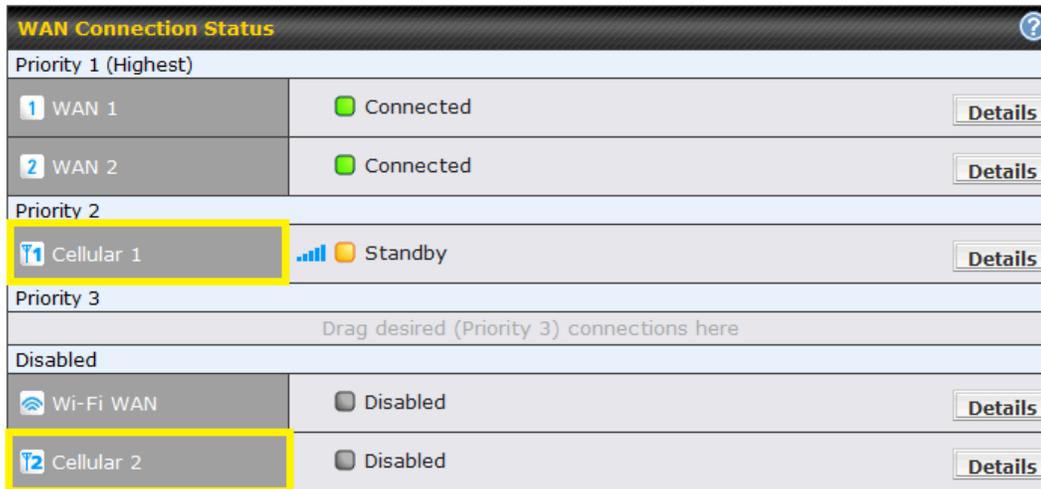
**IPv6**  
Disabled

#### Tip

Please refer to **Section 12, Configuring the WAN Interface(s)**, for details on setting up DHCP, static IP, PPPoE, and mobile Internet connections.

## 8.4 Cellular WAN

To access cellular WAN settings, click **Network>WAN>Details**.



(Available on the Peplink 30 LTE only)



Cellular 1 Status	
IMSI	No SIM Card Detected
MEID	HEX: A100001F7DC038 DEC: 270113180708241208
ESN	8052FC8A
IMEI	356144040031862

Cellular Status	
<b>IMSI</b>	This is the International Mobile Subscriber Identity which uniquely identifies the SIM card. This is applicable to 3G modems only.
<b>MEID</b>	The Balance 30 LTE supports both HSPA and EV-DO. For Sprint or Verizon Wireless EV-DO users, a unique MEID identifier code (in hexadecimal format) is used by the carrier to associate the EV-DO device with the user. This information is presented in hex and decimal format.
<b>ESN</b>	This serves the same purpose as MEID HEX but uses an older format.
<b>IMEI</b>	This is the unique ID for identifying the modem in GSM/HSPA mode.

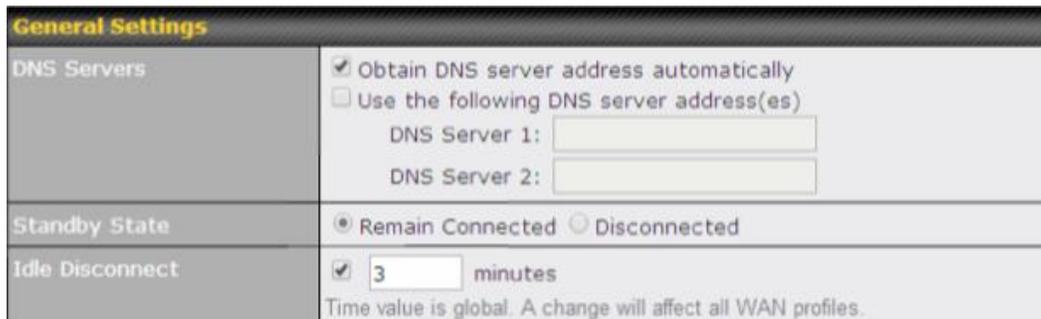
WAN Connection Settings	
WAN Connection Name	Cellular 1 <span style="float: right;">Default</span>
Network Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> HSPA <input type="radio"/> Sprint, EV-DO <input type="radio"/> Verizon, EV-DO
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> IP Forwarding

WAN Connection Settings	
<b>WAN Connection Name</b>	This field is for defining a name to represent this WAN connection.
<b>Network Mode</b>	Users have to specify the network they are on accordingly.
<b>Routing Mode</b>	This option allows you to select the routing method to be used in routing IP frames via the WAN connection. The mode can be either <b>NAT</b> (network address translation) or <b>IP Forwarding</b> . Click the  button to enable IP forwarding.

Cellular Settings	
3G/2G 	Auto ▼
Authentication	Auto ▼
Band Selection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WCDMA / HSDPA / HSUPA / HSPA+ (800 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WCDMA / HSDPA / HSUPA / HSPA+ (850 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WCDMA / HSDPA / HSUPA / HSPA+ (900 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WCDMA / HSDPA / HSUPA / HSPA+ (1700 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WCDMA / HSDPA / HSUPA / HSPA+ (1900 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WCDMA / HSDPA / HSUPA / HSPA+ (2100 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GSM / GPRS / EDGE (850 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GSM / GPRS / EDGE (900 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GSM / GPRS / EDGE (1800 MHz) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GSM / GPRS / EDGE (1900 MHz)
Data Roaming	<input type="checkbox"/>
Operator Settings	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom
APN	<input type="text"/>
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="text"/>
SIM PIN (Optional)	<input type="text"/>

Cellular Settings	
<b>3G/2G</b>	Band selection to restrict cellular on a particular band. Click on the  button to enable the selection of specific bands.

<b>Authentication</b>	Choose from <b>Auto</b> , <b>PAP Only</b> , or <b>CHAP Only</b> to authenticate cellular connections.
<b>Band Selection</b>	Choose bands to restrict cellular traffic to those bands.
<b>Data Roaming</b>	This checkbox enables data roaming on this particular SIM card. Please check your service provider's data roaming policy before proceeding.
<b>Operator Settings</b>	<p>This setting applies to 3G / EDGE / GPRS modems only. It does not apply to EVDO / EVDO Rev. A modems.</p> <p>This allows you to configure the APN settings of your connection. If <b>Auto</b> is selected, the mobile operator should be detected automatically. The connected device will be configured, and connection will be made automatically afterwards. If there is any difficulty in making a connection, you may select <b>Custom</b> to enter your carrier's <b>APN</b>, <b>Login</b>, <b>Password</b>, and <b>Dial Number</b> settings manually. The correct values can be obtained from your carrier. The default and recommended value for <b>Operator Settings</b> is <b>Auto</b>.</p>
<b>APN / Username / Password / SIM PIN</b>	When <b>Auto</b> is selected, the information in these fields will be filled automatically. Select <b>Custom</b> to customize these parameters. The parameter values are determined by and can be obtained from the ISP.



The screenshot shows the 'General Settings' section of a device's configuration interface. It includes three main sections: 'DNS Servers', 'Standby State', and 'Idle Disconnect'. Under 'DNS Servers', there are two options: 'Obtain DNS server address automatically' (checked) and 'Use the following DNS server address(es)' (unchecked). Below these are two input fields for 'DNS Server 1' and 'DNS Server 2'. Under 'Standby State', there are two radio buttons: 'Remain Connected' (selected) and 'Disconnected'. Under 'Idle Disconnect', there is a checked checkbox and a text input field containing the number '3', followed by the word 'minutes'. A note at the bottom states 'Time value is global. A change will affect all WAN profiles.'

General Settings	
<b>DNS Servers</b>	<p>Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This setting specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.</p> <p>Selecting <b>Obtain DNS server address automatically</b> results in the DNS servers assigned by the PPPoE server being used for outbound DNS lookups over the WAN connection. (The DNS servers are obtained along with the WAN IP address assigned from the PPPoE server.)</p> <p>When <b>Use the following DNS server address(es)</b> is selected, you can put custom DNS server addresses for this WAN connection into the <b>DNS Server 1</b> and <b>DNS Server 2</b> fields.</p>
<b>Standby State</b>	<p>This option allows you to choose whether to remain connected or disconnect when this WAN connection is no longer in the highest priority and has entered the standby state. When <b>Remain connected</b> is chosen, setting this WAN connection as active will make it immediately available for use.</p>

**Idle Disconnect**

When Internet traffic is not detected within the user specified timeframe, the modem will automatically disconnect. Once the traffic is resumed by the LAN host, the connection will be reactivated.

Health Check Settings	
Health Check Method	<input type="text" value="SmartCheck"/>
Timeout	<input type="text" value="5"/> second(s)
Health Check Interval	<input type="text" value="10"/> second(s)
Health Check Retries	<input type="text" value="3"/>
Recovery Retries	<input type="text" value="3"/>

Health Check Settings	
<b>Health Check Method</b>	This setting allows you to specify the health check method for the cellular connection. The available options are <b>Disabled, Ping, DNS Lookup, HTTP, and SmartCheck</b> . The default method is <b>DNS Lookup</b> . See <b>Section 12.3</b> for configuration details.
<b>Timeout</b>	If a health check test cannot be completed within the specified amount of time, the test will be treated as failed.
<b>Health Check Interval</b>	This is the time interval between each health check test.
<b>Health Check Retries</b>	This is the number of consecutive check failures before treating a connection as down.
<b>Recovery Retries</b>	This is the number of responses required after a health check failure before treating a connection as up again.

Dynamic DNS Settings <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Dynamic DNS Service Provider	<input type="text" value="changeip.com"/>
User ID	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
Hosts	<input type="text"/>

Dynamic DNS Settings	
<b>Dynamic DNS Service Provider</b>	<p>This setting specifies the dynamic DNS service provider to be used for the WAN based on supported dynamic DNS service providers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• changeip.com</li><li>• dyndns.org</li><li>• no-ip.org</li><li>• tzo.com</li><li>• DNS-O-Matic</li></ul> <p>Select <b>Disabled</b> to disable this feature. See <b>Section 12.6</b> for configuration details.</p>

Bandwidth Allowance Settings	
Bandwidth Allowance Monitor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Action	Email notification is currently disabled. You can get notified when usage hits 75%/95% of monthly allowance by enabling <a href="#">Email Notification</a> . <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance
Start Day	On <input type="text" value="1st"/> of each month at 00:00 midnight
Monthly Allowance	<input type="text"/> MB
MTU	<input type="text" value="1428"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>

Bandwidth Allowance Monitor Settings	
<b>Bandwidth Allowance Monitor</b>	This option allows you to enable bandwidth usage monitoring on this WAN connection for each billing cycle. When this is not enabled, bandwidth usage of each month is still being tracked but no action will be taken. See <b>Section 12.4</b> for configuration details.
<b>Action</b>	If <b>Email Notification</b> is enabled, you will be notified by email when usage hits 75% and 95% of the monthly allowance. If <b>Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance</b> is checked, this WAN connection will be disconnected automatically when the usage hits the monthly allowance. It will not resume connection unless this option has been turned off or the usage has been reset when a new billing cycle starts.
<b>Start Day</b>	This option allows you to define which day of the month each billing cycle begins.
<b>Monthly Allowance</b>	This field is for defining the maximum bandwidth usage allowed for the WAN connection each month.
<b>MTU</b>	This setting specifies the maximum transmission unit. By default, MTU is set to <b>Custom 1440</b> . You may adjust the MTU value by editing the text field. Click <b>Default</b> to restore the default MTU value. Select <b>Auto</b> and the appropriate MTU value will be automatically detected. The auto-detection will run each time the WAN connection establishes.

## 9 MediaFast Configuration

MediaFast settings can be configured from the **Network** menu.

### 9.1 Setting Up MediaFast Content Caching

To access MediaFast content caching settings, select **Network>Cache Control**.

Cache Control												
Domain	?	<input type="radio"/> Cache on all domains <input checked="" type="radio"/> Cache the specified domains only <input type="radio"/> Do not cache the specified domains										
			ted.com									
Content Type	?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Video <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Images <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OS / Application Updates										
Cache Lifetime Settings	?	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>File Extension</th> <th>Lifetime (days)</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>JPG</td> <td>30</td> <td style="text-align: center;">✖</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">+</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	File Extension	Lifetime (days)		JPG	30	✖			+	
File Extension	Lifetime (days)											
JPG	30	✖										
		+										

Cache Control Settings	
<b>Domain</b>	Choose to <b>Cache on all domains</b> , or enter domain names and then choose either <b>Cache the specified domains only</b> or <b>Do not cache the specified domains</b> .
<b>Content Type</b>	Check these boxes to cache the listed content types or leave boxes unchecked to disable caching for the listed types.
<b>Cache Lifetime Settings</b>	Enter a file extension, such as JPG or DOC. Then enter a lifetime in days to specify how long files with that extension will be cached. Add or delete entries using the controls on the right.

## 9.2 Scheduling Content Prefetching

Content prefetching allows you to download content on a schedule that you define, which can help to preserve network bandwidth during busy times and keep costs down. To access MediaFast content prefetching settings, select **Network>Prefetch Schedule**.

Prefetch Schedule									
Name	Status	Next Run Time	Last Run Time	Last Duration	Result	Last Download	Actions		
▶ Course Progress	Downloading	04-11 06:00	04-09 02:03	-		0 B			
▶ National Geog	Ready	04-11 00:00	04-09 00:00	00:01		4.98 kB			
▶ Syllabus	Downloading	04-11 06:00	04-09 06:00	-		0 B			
▶ Vimeo	Ready	04-11 00:00	04-09 02:03	00:01		115.91 kB			
▶ ted	Ready	04-11 00:00	04-09 00:00	00:01		62.26 kB			

[New Schedule](#)

Tools	
<a href="#">Clear Web Cache</a>	<a href="#">Clear Statistics</a>

Prefetch Schedule Settings	
<b>Name</b>	This field displays the name given to the scheduled download.
<b>Status</b>	Check the status of your scheduled download here.
<b>Next Run Time/Last Run Time</b>	These fields display the date and time of the next and most recent occurrences of the scheduled download.
<b>Last Duration</b>	Check this field to ensure that the most recent download took as long as expected to complete. A value that is too low might indicate an incomplete download or incorrectly specified download target, while a value that is too long could mean a download with an incorrectly specified target or stop time.
<b>Result</b>	This field indicates whether downloads are in progress () or complete () .
<b>Last Download</b>	Check this field to ensure that the most recent download file size is within the expected range. A value that is too low might indicate an incomplete download or incorrectly specified download target, while a value that is too long could mean a download with an incorrectly specified target or stop time. This field is also useful for quickly seeing which downloads are consuming the most storage space.
<b>Actions</b>	<p>To begin a scheduled download immediately, click .</p> <p>To cancel a scheduled download, click .</p> <p>To edit a scheduled download, click .</p> <p>To delete a scheduled download, click .</p>
<b>New Schedule</b>	To begin creating a new scheduled download, click this button.

**Clear Web Cache**

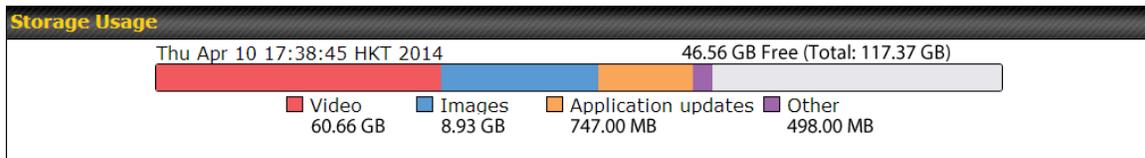
To clear all cached content, click this button. Note that this action cannot be undone.

**Clear Statistics**

To clear all prefetch and status page statistics, click this button.

### 9.3 Viewing MediaFast Statistics

To get details on storage and bandwidth usage, select **Status>MediaFast**.



**Bandwidth Summary**

	Bandwidth Saved	Total Bandwidth	Accesses
Today	16.90 GB (18.53%)	91.22 GB	1 195
Last week	97.28 GB (10.82%)	898.90 GB	981 567
Last month	2641.26 GB (7.24%)	3648.15 GB	3 926 813
Last year	2641.26 GB (7.24%)	3648.15 GB	3 926 813

**Bandwidth Details**

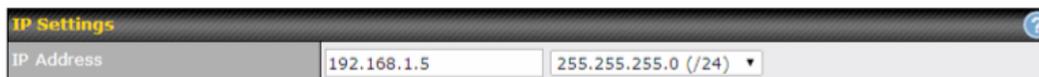
Period:

Order:

Web Domain	Bandwidth Saved	Total Bandwidth	Accesses
<a href="http://theguardian.com">theguardian.com</a>	2.61 GB (53.16%)	4.91 GB	1830
<a href="http://ted.com">ted.com</a>	12.52 KB (36.00%)	34.77 MB	850

## 10 Configuring the LAN Interface

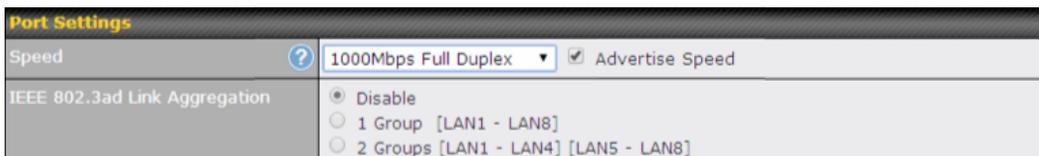
LAN Interface settings are located at **Network>Interfaces>LAN**. Begin setting up your physical LAN by entering IP settings (VLAN configuration will be covered following physical LAN setup).



The screenshot shows a web interface for IP Settings. It has a title bar 'IP Settings' with a help icon. Below it, there are two input fields: 'IP Address' with the value '192.168.1.5' and a subnet mask dropdown menu showing '255.255.255.0 (/24)'.

IP Settings	
<b>IP Address &amp; Subnet Mask</b>	Enter the Peplink Balance's IP address and subnet mask values to be used on the LAN.

Next, choose port settings.



The screenshot shows a web interface for Port Settings. It has a title bar 'Port Settings' with a help icon. Below it, there are two sections: 'Speed' with a dropdown menu set to '1000Mbps Full Duplex' and a checked 'Advertise Speed' checkbox; and 'IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation' with radio button options for 'Disable', '1 Group [LAN1 - LAN8]', and '2 Groups [LAN1 - LAN4] [LAN5 - LAN8]'.

Port Settings	
<b>Speed</b>	The default speed setting is <b>Auto</b> , which allows the Balance to detect and apply an appropriate speed setting. You can also set the speed manually, as well as specify whether the speed will be advertised on the network. Generally, advertising port speed is necessary only when the port experiences difficulty negotiating speeds with peer devices.
<b>IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation</b>	Choose a link aggregation setting for the port or disable link aggregation here.

If drop-In mode will be used, you can configure it in the next section.

Drop-In Mode Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN for Drop-In Mode	WAN 1
Share Drop-In IP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Shared IP Address	255.255.255.0 (/24)
WAN Default Gateway	
WAN DNS Servers	DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>
NOTE: The DHCP Server Settings will be overwritten.	
The following WAN 1 settings will be overwritten: Enable, Connection Method, Routing Mode, Connection Type, MTU, Health Check, Additional Public IP, and Dynamic DNS Settings.	
The PPTP Server will be disabled.	
Tip: please review the DNS Forwarding setting under the Service Forwarding section.	

Drop-in Mode Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Drop-in mode eases the installation of the Peplink Balance on a live network between the existing firewall and router, such that no configuration changes are required on existing equipment. Check the box to enable the Drop-in Mode feature.  Please refer to <b>Section 11, Drop-in Mode</b> for details.
<b>WAN for Drop-In Mode</b>	Select the WAN port to be used for drop-in mode. If <b>WAN 1 with LAN Bypass</b> is selected, the high availability feature will be disabled automatically.
<b>Shared Drop-In IP<sup>A</sup></b>	When this option is enabled, the passthrough IP address will be used to connect to WAN hosts (email notification, remote syslog, etc.). The Balance will listen for this IP address when WAN hosts access services provided by the Balance (web admin access from the WAN, DNS server requests, etc.).  To connect to hosts on the LAN (email notification, remote syslog, etc.), the default gateway address will be used. The Balance will listen for this IP address when LAN hosts access services provided by the Balance (web admin access from the WAN, DNS proxy, etc.).
<b>Shared IP Address<sup>A</sup></b>	Access to this IP address will be passed through to the LAN port if this device is not serving the service being accessed. The shared IP address will be used in connecting to hosts on the WAN (e.g., email notification, remote syslog, etc.) The device will also listen on the IP address when hosts on the WAN access services served on this device (e.g., web admin accesses from WAN, DNS server, etc.)
<b>WAN Default Gateway</b>	Enter the WAN router's IP address in this field. If there are more hosts in addition to the router on the WAN segment, check the <b>I have other host(s) on WAN segment</b> box and enter the IP address of the hosts that need to access LAN devices or be accessed by others.
<b>WAN DNS Servers</b>	Enter the selected WAN's corresponding DNS server IP addresses.

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.

Note: drop-in mode and VLAN functionality are mutually exclusive. To change DHCP settings, continue to the next section.

DHCP Server Settings			
DHCP Server	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enable	
IP Range	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/>	-	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.250"/>
Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>	(/24)	
Lease Time	<input type="text" value="1"/>	Days	<input type="text" value="0"/> Hours <input type="text" value="0"/> Mins
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Assign DNS server automatically	
WINS Server	<input type="checkbox"/>	Assign WINS server	
BOOTP	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Extended DHCP Option	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
No Extended DHCP Option			
<input type="button" value="Add"/>			
DHCP Reservation	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
			<input type="button" value="+"/>

DHCP Server Settings	
<b>DHCP Server</b>	When this setting is enabled, the Peplink Balance's DHCP server automatically assigns an IP address to each computer that is connected via LAN and configured to obtain an IP address via DHCP. The Peplink Balance's DHCP server can prevent IP address collisions on the LAN.
<b>IP Range &amp; Subnet Mask</b>	These settings allocate a range of IP address that will be assigned to LAN computers by the Peplink Balance's DHCP server.
<b>Lease Time</b>	This setting specifies the length of time throughout which an IP address of a DHCP client remains valid. Upon expiration of <b>Lease Time</b> , the assigned IP address will no longer be valid and the IP address assignment must be renewed.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	This option allows you to input the DNS server addresses to be offered to DHCP clients. If <b>Assign DNS server automatically</b> is selected, the Peplink Balance's built-in DNS server address (i.e., LAN IP address) will be offered.
<b>WINS Server</b>	This option allows you to specify the Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server. You may choose to use the built-in WINS server or external WINS servers. When this unit is connected using SpeedFusion™, other VPN peers can share this unit's built-in WINS server by entering this unit's LAN IP address in their <b>DHCP WINS Servers</b> setting. Therefore, all PC clients in the VPN can resolve the NetBIOS names of other clients in remote peers. If you have enabled this option, a list of WINS clients will be displayed at <b>Status&gt;WINS Clients</b> .
<b>BOOTP</b>	Check this box to enable BOOTP on older networks that still require it.
<b>Extended DHCP Option</b>	In addition to standard DHCP options (e.g. DNS server address, gateway address, subnet mask), you can specify the value of additional extended DHCP options, as defined in RFC 2132. With these extended options enabled, you can pass additional configuration information to LAN hosts. To define an extended DHCP option, click the <b>Add</b> button, choose the option to define, and then enter its value. For values that are in IP address list format, you can enter one IP address per line in the provided text area input control. Each option can be defined once only.
<b>DHCP</b>	This setting reserves the assignment of fixed IP addresses for a list of computers on the LAN. The computers to be assigned fixed IP addresses on the LAN are identified by their

**Reservation**    MAC addresses.  
The fixed IP address assignment is displayed as a cross-reference list between the computers' names, MAC addresses, and fixed IP addresses.  
**Name** (an optional field) allows you to specify a name to represent the device. MAC addresses should be in the format of **00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE**. Press  to create a new record. Press  to remove a record. Reserved clients information can be imported from the **Client List**, located at **Status>Client List**. For more details, please refer to **Section 26.3**.

If required, enter static route and/or WINS server settings.

Static Route Settings			
Static Route	Destination Network	Subnet Mask	Gateway
		255.255.255.0 (/24)	
			

**Static Route Settings**

**Static Route**    This table is for defining static routing rules for the LAN segment. A static route consists of the network address, subnet mask, and gateway address. The address and subnet mask values are in w.x.y.z format.  
The local LAN subnet and subnets behind the LAN will be advertised to the VPN. Remote routes sent over the VPN will also be accepted. Any VPN member will be able to route to the local subnets. Press  to create a new route. Press  to remove a route.

WINS Server Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**WINS Server Settings**

**Enable**    Check the box to enable the WINS Server. A list of WINS clients will be displayed at **Status>WINS Clients**.

Finally, enter any needed DNS proxy settings. Once all settings have been entered,

click **Save** to store your changes.

DNS Proxy Settings		
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
DNS Caching	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Include Google Public DNS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Local DNS Records	Host Name	IP Address
DNS Resolvers	Connection	Current Status
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	10.90.0.1 10.88.3.1 168.95.1.1
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2	10.90.0.1 10.88.3.1 168.95.1.1
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3	
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4	
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5	
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6	
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet	
	Connection	DNS Servers
<input type="checkbox"/> LAN		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Connections		

\* Required

DNS Proxy Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	<p>To enable the DNS proxy feature, check this box, and then set up the feature at <b>Network&gt;LAN&gt;DNS Proxy Settings</b>.</p> <p>A DNS proxy server can be enabled to serve DNS requests originating from LAN/PPTP/SpeedFusion™ peers. Requests are forwarded to the <b>DNS servers/resolvers</b> defined for each WAN connection.</p>
<b>DNS Caching</b>	<p>This field is to enable DNS caching on the built-in DNS proxy server. When the option is enabled, queried DNS replies will be cached until the records' TTL has been reached. This feature can improve DNS response time by storing all received DNS results for faster DNS lookup. However, it cannot return the most updated result for frequently updated DNS records. By default, <b>DNS Caching</b> is disabled.</p>
<b>Include Google Public DNS Servers</b>	<p>When this option is enabled, the DNS proxy server will forward DNS requests to <a href="#">Google's Public DNS Servers</a>, in addition to the DNS servers defined in each WAN. This could increase the DNS service's availability. This setting is disabled by default.</p>
<b>Local DNS Records</b>	<p>This table is for defining custom local DNS records. A static local DNS record consists of a host name and IP address. When looking up the host name from the LAN to LAN IP of the Peplink Balance, the corresponding IP address will be returned. Press <input type="button" value="+"/> to create a new record. Press <input type="button" value="X"/> to remove a record.</p>
<b>DNS Resolvers</b> A	<p>Check the box to enable the WINS Server. A list of WINS clients will be displayed at <b>Network&gt;LAN&gt;DNS Proxy Settings&gt;DNS Resolvers</b>.</p> <p>This field specifies which DNS resolvers will receive forwarded DNS requests. If no</p>

WAN/VPN/LAN DNS resolver is selected, all of the WAN's DNS resolvers will be selected. If a SpeedFusion™ peer is selected, you may enter the VPN peer's DNS resolver IP address(es). Queries will be forwarded to the selected connections' resolvers. If all of the selected connections are down, queries will be forwarded to all resolvers on healthy WAN connections.

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right hand corner to activate.

To enable VLAN configuration, click the  button in the **IP Settings** section.



To add a new LAN, click the **New LAN** button. To change LAN settings, click the name of the LAN to change under the **LAN** heading.



The following settings are displayed:

**LAN** ✕

---

**IP Settings**

Name	<input type="text"/>		
IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.5"/>	-	<input type="text" value="255.255.255.0 (/24)"/> ▾
Inter-VLAN routing	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Captive Portal	<input type="checkbox"/>		

---

**DHCP Server Settings**

DHCP Server	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable														
IP Range	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/>	-	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.250"/> <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0 (/24)"/> ▾												
Lease Time	<input type="text" value="1"/> Days	<input type="text" value="0"/> Hours	<input type="text" value="0"/> Mins												
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Assign DNS server automatically														
WINS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/> Assign WINS server														
BOOTP	<input type="checkbox"/>														
Extended DHCP Option	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 60%;">Option</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Value</th> <th style="width: 20%;"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: center;"><i>No Extended DHCP Option</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="Add"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Option	Value		<i>No Extended DHCP Option</i>			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>		
Option	Value														
<i>No Extended DHCP Option</i>															
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>													
<input type="button" value="Add"/>															
DHCP Reservation	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Name</th> <th style="width: 30%;">MAC Address</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Static IP</th> <th style="width: 10%;"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="button" value="+"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Name	MAC Address	Static IP		<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>				
Name	MAC Address	Static IP													
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>												

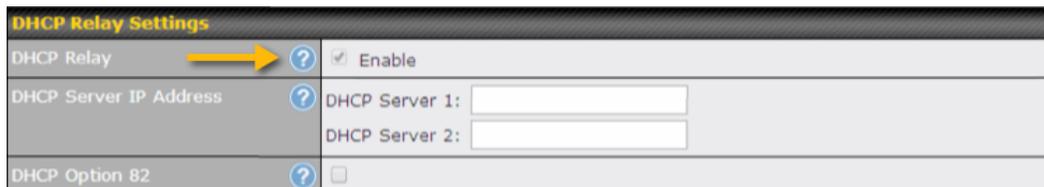
IPSettings	
<b>Name</b>	Enter a name for the LAN.
<b>IP Address &amp; Subnet Mask</b>	Enter the Peplink Balance's IP address and subnet mask values to be used on the LAN.
<b>Inter-VLAN routing</b>	Check this box to enable routing between virtual LANs.
<b>Captive Portal</b>	Check this box to turn on captive portals.

DHCP Server Settings	
<b>DHCP Server</b>	When this setting is enabled, the Peplink Balance's DHCP server automatically assigns an IP address to each computer that is connected via LAN and configured to obtain an IP address via DHCP. The Peplink Balance's DHCP server can prevent IP address collisions on the LAN.
<b>IP Range &amp; Subnet Mask</b>	These settings allocate a range of IP address that will be assigned to LAN computers by the Peplink Balance's DHCP server.
<b>Lease Time</b>	This setting specifies the length of time throughout which an IP address of a DHCP client remains valid. Upon expiration of <b>Lease Time</b> , the assigned IP address will no longer be valid and the IP address assignment must be renewed.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	This option allows you to input the DNS server addresses to be offered to DHCP clients. If <b>Assign DNS server automatically</b> is selected, the Peplink Balance's built-in DNS server

	address (i.e., LAN IP address) will be offered.
<b>WINS Servers</b>	<p>This option allows you to specify the Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) server. You may choose to use the built-in WINS server or external WINS servers.</p> <p>When this unit is connected using SpeedFusion™, other VPN peers can share this unit's built-in WINS server by entering this unit's LAN IP address in their <b>DHCP WINS Servers</b> setting. Therefore, all PC clients in the VPN can resolve the NetBIOS names of other clients in remote peers. If you have enabled this option, a list of WINS clients will be displayed at <b>Status&gt;WINS Clients</b>.</p>
<b>BOOTP</b>	Check this box to enable BOOTP on older networks that still require it.
<b>Extended DHCP Option</b>	<p>In addition to standard DHCP options (e.g. DNS server address, gateway address, subnet mask), you can specify the value of additional extended DHCP options, as defined in RFC 2132. With these extended options enabled, you can pass additional configuration information to LAN hosts.</p> <p>To define an extended DHCP option, click the <b>Add</b> button, choose the option to define, and then enter its value. For values that are in IP address list format, you can enter one IP address per line in the provided text area input control. Each option can be defined once only.</p>
<b>DHCP Reservation</b>	<p>This setting reserves the assignment of fixed IP addresses for a list of computers on the LAN. The computers to be assigned fixed IP addresses on the LAN are identified by their MAC addresses. The fixed IP address assignment is displayed as a cross-reference list between the computers' names, MAC addresses, and fixed IP addresses.</p> <p><b>Name</b> (an optional field) allows you to specify a name to represent the device. MAC addresses should be in the format of <b>00:AA:BB:CC:DD:EE</b>. Press  to create a new record. Press  to remove a record. Reserved clients information can be imported from the <b>Client List</b>, located at <b>Status&gt;Client List</b>. For more details, please refer to <b>Section 26.3</b>.</p>

Once configuration is complete, click **Save** to store the changes.

To configure DHCP relay, first click the  button found next to the **DHCP Server** option to display the settings.

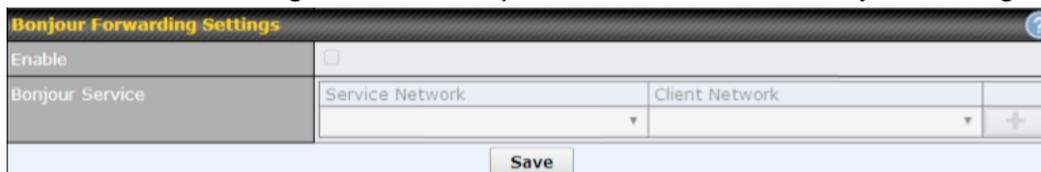


DHCP Relay Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Check this box to turn on DHCP relay.
<b>DHCP Server IP Address</b>	Enter the IP addresses of one or two DHCP servers in the provided fields. The DHCP servers entered here will receive relayed DHCP requests from the LAN. For active-passive DHCP server configurations, enter active and passive DHCP server relay IP addresses in <b>DHCP Server 1</b> and <b>DHCP Server 2</b> .
<b>DHCP Option</b>	DCHP Option 82 includes device information as relay agent for the attached client when forwarding DHCP requests from client to server. This option also embeds the device's MAC

**82** address and network name in circuit and remote IDs. Check this box to enable DHCP Option 82.

Once DHCP is set up, configure **LAN Physical Settings**, **Static Route Settings**, **WINS Server Settings**, and **DNS Proxy Settings** as noted above.

Finally, if needed, configure Bonjour forwarding, Apple's zero configuration networking protocol. Once VLAN configuration is complete, click **Save** to store your changes.

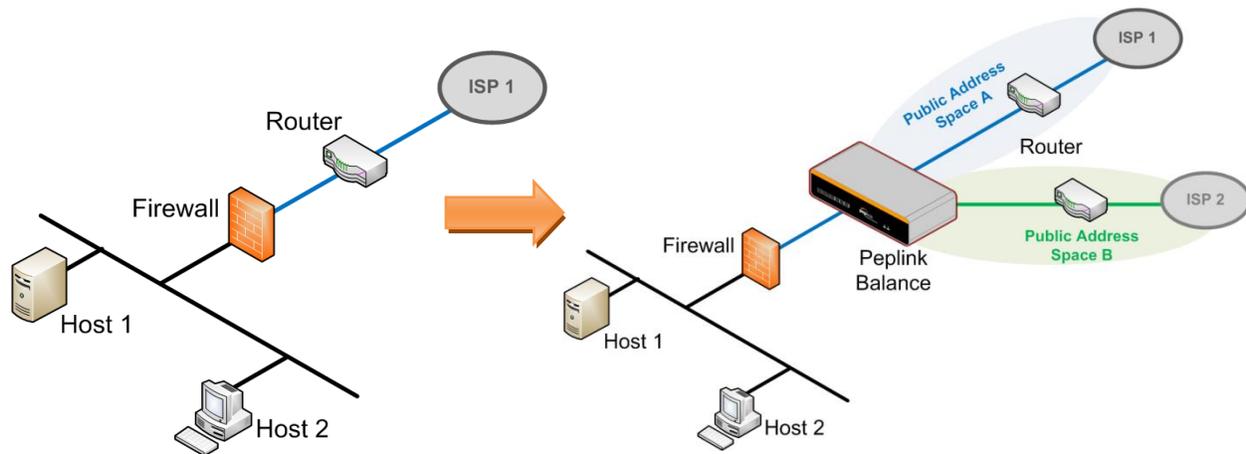


Bonjour ForwardingSettings	
<b>Enable</b>	Check this box to turn on Bonjour forwarding.
<b>Bonjour Service</b>	Choose <b>Service</b> and <b>Client</b> networks from the drop-down menus, and then click  to add the networks. To delete an existing Bonjour listing, click  .

## 11 Drop-in Mode

Drop-in mode (or transparent bridging mode) eases the installation of the Peplink Balance on a live network between the firewall and router, such that changes to the settings of existing equipment are not required.

The following diagram illustrates drop-in mode setup:



Enable drop-in mode using the Setup Wizard. After enabling this feature and selecting the WAN for drop-in mode, various settings, including the WAN's connection method and IP address, will be automatically updated.

When drop-in mode is enabled, the LAN and the WAN for drop-in mode ports will be bridged. Traffic between the LAN hosts and WAN router will be forwarded between the devices. In this case, the hosts on both sides will not notice any IP or MAC address changes.

After successfully setting up the Peplink Balance as part of the network using drop-in mode, a Peplink Balance 210 will accommodate one additional WAN connection; a 310, 305, or 380 will accommodate two, a 580 will accommodate four, a 710 will accommodate six, a 1350 will accommodate twelve, and a 2500 will accommodate eleven additional WAN connections. The MediaFast 500 supports up to five WAN connections after activating drop-in mode (all MediaFast 500-B WAN ports are active by default; load balancing and/or a SpeedFusion license is required to activate MediaFast 500-A WAN ports 2-5).

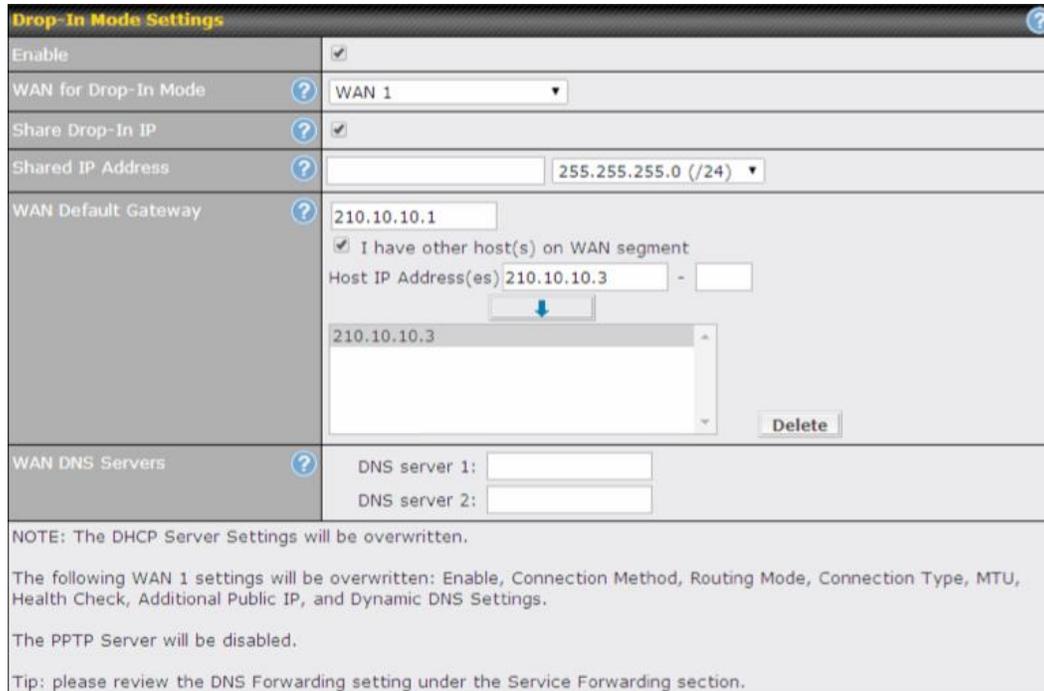
### IMPORTANT NOTE for customers using Drop-in Mode and planning to upgrade from Firmware 4.8.2 or below to 5.0+

MAC address passthrough for drop-in mode is implemented in Firmware 5.0 and above. If drop-in mode is enabled when upgrading from a previous firmware version, the ARP tables on hosts on LAN and WAN segments must be flushed once. Alternately, the hosts may be rebooted. Otherwise, hosts on one side may not be able to reach hosts on the other side of the Peplink Balance until old ARP records expire. Units not using drop-in mode are not affected.

## NOTE

The PPTP server will be disabled in drop-in mode.

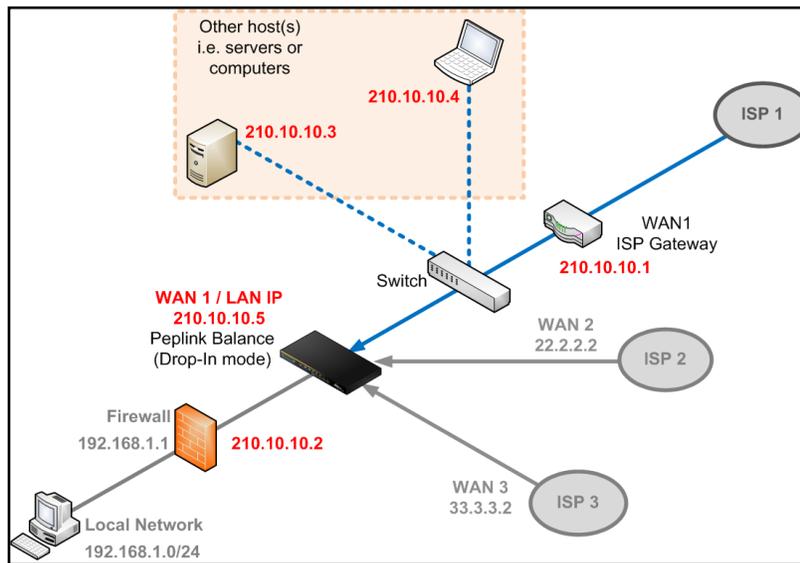
To enable drop-in mode, perform the following steps:



Drop-In Mode Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN for Drop-In Mode	WAN 1
Share Drop-In IP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Shared IP Address	255.255.255.0 (/24)
WAN Default Gateway	210.10.10.1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I have other host(s) on WAN segment Host IP Address(es) 210.10.10.3 - <input type="text"/> 210.10.10.3 <input type="button" value="Delete"/>
WAN DNS Servers	DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>
NOTE: The DHCP Server Settings will be overwritten. The following WAN 1 settings will be overwritten: Enable, Connection Method, Routing Mode, Connection Type, MTU, Health Check, Additional Public IP, and Dynamic DNS Settings. The PPTP Server will be disabled. Tip: please review the DNS Forwarding setting under the Service Forwarding section.	

1. Check the **Enable** box under **Drop-in Mode**, located at **Network>Interfaces>LAN**. (After checking the **Enable** box, most network settings for WAN1 will be hidden in the web admin interface.)
2. Enter the IP address of the WAN1 router in the **WAN Default Gateway** field. Ensure that the Peplink Balance's IP subnet is the same as the firewall's WAN port and the router's LAN port.
3. If there are hosts other than the router on the WAN segment of the Peplink Balance, check the **have other host(s) on WAN segment** box, enter the IP address(es) of the host(s), and then click the down-arrow to add the hosts.
4. To avoid consuming an IP address, click  to turn on the shared IP address feature. Then check **Share Drop-In IP** and enter a **Shared IP Address**.

The following diagram illustrates:

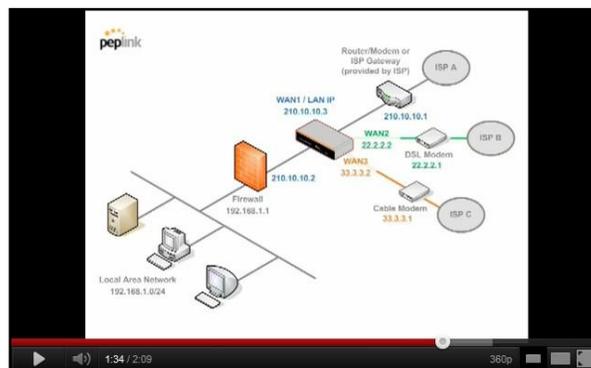


### Important Note

Starting from Firmware version 5.0, drop-in mode can be configured on any WAN port. Please note that only one WAN port can be configured in drop-in mode. If you have selected the LAN bypass port (which is currently available on WAN1 of the Balance 1350 and WAN5 of the Balance 580) as the WAN for drop-in mode, the high availability feature will be DISABLED automatically.

### Tip

Want to know more about drop-in mode? Visit our [YouTube Channel](#) for video tutorials!



<http://youtu.be/IZG2-VPmI5w>

## 12 Configuring the WAN Interface(s)

WAN interface settings are located at: **Network>Interfaces>WAN**.

Connection Name	Method	Routing Mode	Type
1. WAN_1	DHCP	NAT	Always-on
2. WAN_2	DHCP	NAT	Always-on
3. WAN_3	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
4. WAN_4	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
5. WAN_5	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
6. WAN_6	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
7. WAN_7	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
8. WAN_8	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
9. WAN_9	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
10. WAN_10	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
11. WAN_11	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
12. WAN_12	Not Configured	NAT	Backup Group 1
13. Mobile Internet	PPP	NAT	Backup Group 1

**IPv6**  
Disabled

By clicking a **Connection Name**, connection settings of that WAN can be modified. The connection method and details can be obtained from your ISP.

Connection Settings	
WAN Connection Name	WAN 1
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Connection Method	<input type="text" value="DHCP"/> <a href="#">Click here to edit Connection settings</a>
Routing Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT
Connection Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Always-on <input type="radio"/> Backup Priority
Reply to ICMP Ping	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Upload Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="1000"/> Mbps
Download Bandwidth	<input type="text" value="1000"/> Mbps

Connection Settings	
<b>WAN Connection Name</b>	This field is for defining a name to represent this WAN connection.
<b>Enable</b>	This field is for choosing whether to enable this WAN connection.
<b>Connection Method</b>	This option allows you to select the connection method for this WAN connection. Available options are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DHCP</li> <li>Static IP</li> <li>PPPoE</li> <li>Mobile Internet Connection</li> </ol>

	See <b>Sections 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 12.1.3, and 0</b> for configuration details pertaining to each connection method.
<b>Routing Mode</b>	This field shows that <b>NAT</b> (network address translation) will be applied to the traffic routing over this WAN connection. <b>IP Forwarding</b> is also available when you click the link in the help text. For further details, please refer to <b>Appendix B, Routing under DHCP, Static IP, and PPPoE</b> .
<b>Connection Type</b>	<p>This setting specifies the utilization of the WAN connection.</p> <p><b>Always-on</b> results in the WAN connection being used whenever it is available. If <b>Backup Priority</b> and a priority group are selected, the WAN connection is treated as a backup connection and is used only in the absence of available always-on WAN connection(s) and higher priority backup connection(s).</p>  <p>The default and recommended connection type is <b>Always-on</b>.</p>
<b>Reply to ICMP Ping</b>	If this field is disabled, the WAN connection will not respond to ICMP ping requests. By default, this setting is enabled.
<b>Upload Bandwidth</b>	This setting specifies the data bandwidth in the outbound direction from the LAN through the WAN interface. This value is provided by your ISP and should reflect the actual speed of the WAN. This value is referenced when default weight is chosen for outbound traffic and traffic prioritization. Setting the correct value here can result in effective traffic prioritization and efficient use of upload bandwidth.
<b>Download Bandwidth</b>	This setting specifies the data bandwidth in the inbound direction from the WAN interface to the LAN. This value is provided by your ISP and should reflect the actual speed of the WAN. This value is referenced as the default weight value when using the <b>Least Used</b> or <b>Persistence (Auto)</b> algorithms in <b>Outbound Policy</b> with <b>Managed by Custom Rules</b> chosen.

**IPv6**

<b>IPv6</b>	<p>IPv6 support can be enabled on one of the available Ethernet WAN ports. On this screen, you can choose which WAN will support IPv6.</p>  <p>To enable IPv6 support on a WAN, the WAN router must respond to stateless address auto configuration advertisements and DHCPv6 requests. IPv6 clients on the LAN will acquire their IPv6, gateway, and DNS server addresses from it. The device will also acquire an IPv6 address for performing ping/traceroute checks and accepting web admin accesses.</p>
-------------	--

## 12.1 Connection Method(s)

There are four possible connection methods:

1. DHCP
2. Static IP
3. PPPoE
4. Mobile Internet Connection (for USB WAN)

### 12.1.1 DHCP Connection

The DHCP connection method is suitable if your ISP provides an IP address automatically using DHCP (e.g., cable, metro Ethernet, etc.).



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "DHCP Settings". It is divided into two sections. The top section, "DNS Servers", contains two radio button options: "Obtain DNS server address automatically" (which is selected) and "Use the following DNS server address(es)". Below these options are two input fields labeled "DNS server 1:" and "DNS server 2:". The bottom section, "Hostname (Optional)", contains a question mark icon and an input field, with a checkbox labeled "Use custom hostname" below it.

DHCP Settings	
<b>DNS Servers</b>	<p>Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This setting specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.</p> <p>Selecting <b>Obtain DNS server address automatically</b> results in the DNS servers assigned by the WAN DHCP server being used for outbound DNS lookups over the connection. (The DNS servers are obtained along with the WAN IP address assigned by the DHCP server.) When <b>Use the following DNS server address(es)</b> is selected, you may enter custom DNS server addresses for this WAN connection into the <b>DNS server 1</b> and <b>DNS server 2</b> fields.</p>
<b>Hostname (Optional)</b>	<p>If your service provider's DHCP server requires you to supply a hostname value upon acquiring an IP address, you may enter the value here. If your service provider does not provide you with a hostname, you can safely bypass this option.</p>

Please refer to **Sections 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, and 12.6** for details about **WAN Health Check, Bandwidth Allowance Monitor, Additional Public IP Settings, and Dynamic DNS Settings**.

### 12.1.2 Static IP Connection

The static IP connection method is suitable if your ISP provides a static IP address to connect directly.

Static IP Settings	
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾
Default Gateway	<input type="text"/>
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>

Static IP Settings	
<b>IP Address / Subnet Mask / Default Gateway</b>	These settings specify the information required in order to communicate on the Internet via a fixed Internet IP address. The information is typically determined by and can be obtained from your ISP.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This field specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.  You can input the ISP-provided DNS server addresses into the <b>DNSserver 1</b> and <b>DNSserver 2</b> fields. If no address is entered here, this link will not be used for DNS lookups.

Please refer to **Sections 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, and 12.6** for details about **WAN Health Check, Bandwidth Allowance Monitor, Additional Public IP Settings, and Dynamic DNS Settings**.

### 12.1.3 PPPoE Connection

This connection method is suitable if your ISP provides a login ID/password to connect via PPPoE.

PPPoE Settings	
PPPoE User Name	<input type="text"/>
PPPoE Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm PPPoE Password	<input type="password"/>
Server Name	<input type="text"/> <small>Leave it blank unless it's provided by ISP</small>
IP Address	<input type="text"/> <small>Leave it blank unless it's provided by ISP</small>
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Obtain DNS server address automatically <input type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>

PPPoE Settings	
<b>PPPoE User Name / Password</b>	Enter the required information in these fields in order to connect via PPPoE to your ISP. The parameter values are determined by and can be obtained from your ISP.
<b>Confirm PPPoE Password</b>	Verify your password by entering it again in this field.
<b>ServerName (Optional)</b>	Servername is a PPPoE parameter which is provided by your ISP. Note: Leave this field blank unless it is provided by your ISP.
<b>IP Address</b>	PPPoE server address is a parameter which is provided by your ISP. Note: Leave this field blank unless it is provided by your ISP.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	<p>Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This setting specifies the DNS (Domain Name System) servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection.</p> <p>Selecting <b>Obtain DNS server address automatically</b> results in the DNS servers assigned by the PPPoE server to be used for outbound DNS lookups over the WAN connection. (The DNS servers are obtained along with the WAN IP address assigned from the PPPoE server.)</p> <p>When <b>Use the following DNS server address(es)</b> is selected, you can enter custom DNS server addresses for this WAN connection into the <b>DNS server 1</b> and <b>DNS server 2</b> fields.</p>

Please refer to **Sections 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, and 12.6** for details about **WAN Health Check, Bandwidth Allowance Monitor, Additional Public IP Settings, and Dynamic DNS Settings**.

**Note**

A PPPoE connection made from a firewall does not work with drop-in mode.

**12.1.4 Mobile Internet Connection**

The **Mobile InternetConnection** method is suitable for USB modem mobile connections, such as 3G, WiMAX, LTE, EVDO, EDGE, and GPRS. Currently, it only applies to connections made via the Balance’s USB mobile WAN port, except in the case of the Balance 30 LTE, which includes a built-in 4G LTE modem. For a list of supported modems, please refer to Peplink Modem Support page at <http://www.peplink.com/modem>.

Connection Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Connection Type	<input type="radio"/> Always-on <input checked="" type="radio"/> Backup Priority <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Group 1 (Highest)</span>
Standby State	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Remain connected <input type="radio"/> Disconnect
Idle Disconnect	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="3"/> minutes <small>Time value is global. A change will affect all WAN profiles.</small>
GRE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Reply to ICMP PING	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Operator Settings (for HSPA/EDGE/GPRS only)	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom Mobile Operator Settings APN: <input type="text"/> Login ID: <input type="text"/> Password: <input type="text"/> Dial Number: <input type="text"/>
Remote GRE Host	<input type="text"/>
Tunnel Local IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Tunnel Remote IP Address	<input type="text"/>
DNS Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the following DNS server address(es) DNS server 1: <input type="text"/> DNS server 2: <input type="text"/>

**Mobile Internet Connection Settings**

<b>Enable</b>	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable the connection.
<b>Connection Type</b>	This setting specifies the utilization of the WAN connection. <b>Always-on</b> results in the WAN connection being used whenever it is available. If <b>Backup</b> is selected, the WAN connection is treated as a backup connection and is used only in the absence of an available always-on WAN. The default and recommended connection type is <b>Always-on</b> .
<b>Standby State</b>	This option allows you to choose whether to remain connected or disconnect when this WAN connection is no longer in the highest priority and has entered the standby state. When <b>Remain connected</b> is chosen and this WAN connection is made active, the WAN connection will be immediately available for use.
<b>Idle</b>	With this option enabled, an idle connection will be disconnected after a specified period of time. This time value specified is global and will affect all WAN profiles. The mobile connection will re-

<b>Disconnect</b>	establish on demand.
<b>Reply to ICMP Ping</b>	If this field is disabled, the WAN connection will not respond to ICMP ping requests. By default, this setting is enabled.
<b>Operator Settings</b>	<p>This setting applies to 3G/LTE/EDGE/GPRS modems only. It does not apply to EVDO/EVDO Rev. A modems.</p> <p><b>Operator Settings</b> allows you to configure the APN settings of your connection. If <b>Auto</b> is selected, the Peplink Balance will automatically detect the APN, configure the modem, and make a connection. You may change the APN settings by selecting <b>Custom Mobile Operator Settings</b>. The default and recommended <b>Operator Settings</b> value is <b>Auto</b>. The correct values can be obtained from your mobile Internet service provider.</p>
<b>SIM PIN (Optional)</b>	This is an optional field which is only needed when there is SIM lock for your SIM card service.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	Each ISP may provide a set of DNS servers for DNS lookups. This field specifies the DNS servers to be used when a DNS lookup is routed through this connection. You can input the ISP-provided DNS server addresses into the <b>DNS server 1</b> and <b>DNS server 2</b> fields. If no address is entered here, this link will not be used for DNS lookups.

Please refer to **Sections 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, and 12.6** for details about **WAN Health Check, Bandwidth Allowance Monitor, Additional Public IP Settings, and Dynamic DNS Settings**.

### 12.1.4.1 Modem Specific Custom Settings

The following settings may be available, depending on the modem model. The example below is for a 3G modem.

Modem Specific Custom Settings	
Modem Model	xxx Modem
IMSI	123400005678900
Network Type	<span>?</span> 3G preferred ▾
GSM Frequency Band	All Bands ▾

Modem Specific Custom Settings	
<b>Modem Model</b>	This field displays the manufacturer name of the connected mobile modem.
<b>IMSI</b>	This field shows the IMSI number associated with the SIM inside the mobile modem.
<b>Network Type</b>	<p>This setting allows you to define your preference for using 3G and/or 2G networks. 3G networks include HSPA/UMTS. 2G networks include EDGE/GPRS.</p> <p>If <b>3G only</b> or <b>2G only</b> is chosen, only the HSPA/UMTS or EDGE/GPRS network will be used, respectively. If the chosen network is not available, no other network will be used, regardless of its availability. The modem connection will remain offline.</p> <p>If <b>3G preferred</b> or <b>2G preferred</b> is chosen, the chosen network will be used when it is available. If the chosen network is not available, the other network will be used whenever available.</p> <p>The default network type is <b>3G preferred</b>.</p>
<b>GSM Frequency Band</b>	<p>This setting allows you to specify which GSM frequency band will be used.</p> <p>GSM1900 is used in the United States, Canada, and many other countries in the Americas.</p> <p>GSM900 / GSM1800 / GSM2100 are used in Europe, the Middle East, Africa, Asia, Oceania, and Brazil.</p> <p>If <b>All Bands</b> is chosen, the appropriate frequency band will be used automatically.</p> <p>The default GSM frequency band is <b>All Bands</b>.</p>

### 12.1.4.2 WiMAX Settings

If a WiMAX modem is present in the system, its settings user interface can be accessed at **Network>Interfaces>WAN>Mobile Internet**. The example shown here relates to Sprint's 250U or 600U WiMAX modems.

Modem Specific Custom Settings	
Modem Model	Sprint Modem
ESN	C7B1C7B1
Network Type	4G only

Modem Specific Custom Settings	
<b>Modem Model</b>	The brand of the modem is automatically detected and appears here.
<b>ESN</b>	The modem's electronic serial number (ESN) is also auto-detected and appears here.
<b>Network Type</b>	This is to specify the network type (e.g., 3G or 4G) to be used with the modem.

## 12.2 Physical Interface Settings

Physical Interface Settings	
Speed	<input type="text" value="Auto"/>
MTU	<input type="radio"/> Auto <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text" value="1440"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>
MSS	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text"/>
MAC Address Clone	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text" value="10 :56 :CA :60 :34 :81"/>
VLAN	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Physical Interface Settings	
<b>Speed</b>	This setting specifies port speed and duplex configurations of the WAN port. By default, <b>Auto</b> is selected, and the appropriate data speed is automatically detected by the Peplink Balance. In the event of negotiation issues, the port speed can be manually specified. You can also choose whether or not to advertise the speed to the peer by selecting <b>Advertise Speed</b> .
<b>MTU</b>	This setting specifies the maximum transmission unit. By default, MTU is set to <b>Custom 1440</b> . You may adjust the MTU value by editing the text field. Click <b>Default</b> to restore the default MTU value. Select <b>Auto</b> , and the appropriate MTU value will be automatically detected. The auto-detection will run each time the WAN connection establishes.
<b>MSS</b>	This setting should be configured based on the maximum payload size that the local system can handle. The MSS (maximum segment size) is computed by taking the MTU and subtracting 40 bytes for TCP over IPv4. If MTU is set to <b>Auto</b> , <b>MSS</b> will also be set automatically. By default, <b>MSS</b> is set to <b>Auto</b> .
<b>MAC Address Clone</b>	This setting allows you to configure the MAC address. Some service providers (e.g., cable providers) identify the client's MAC address and require the client to always use the same MAC address to connect to the network. In such cases, change the WAN interface's MAC address to the original client PC's MAC address via this field. The default MAC address is a unique value assigned at the factory. In most cases, the default value is sufficient. Clicking the <b>Default</b> button restores the MAC address to the default value.
<b>VLAN</b>	Some service providers require the router to enable VLAN tagging for Internet traffic. If it is required by your service provider, you can enable this field and enter the <b>VLAN ID</b> that the provider requires. Note: leave this field disabled if you are not sure.

## 12.3 WAN Health Check

To ensure traffic is routed to healthy WAN connections only, the Peplink Balance can periodically check the health of each WAN connection.

Health Check settings for each WAN connection can be independently configured via **Network>Interfaces>WAN>Health Check Settings**.



The screenshot shows the 'Health Check Settings' window. The 'Health Check Method' dropdown menu is set to 'Disabled'. Below the dropdown, a red error message reads: 'Health Check disabled. Network problem cannot be detected.'

Enable Health Check by selecting **PING**, **DNS Lookup**, or **HTTP** from the **Health Check Method** drop-down menu.

Health Check Settings	
<b>Method</b>	This setting specifies the health check method for the WAN connection. This value can be configured as <b>Disabled</b> , <b>PING</b> , <b>DNS Lookup</b> , or <b>HTTP</b> . The default method is <b>DNS Lookup</b> . For mobile Internet connections, the value of <b>Method</b> can be configured as <b>Disabled</b> or <b>SmartCheck</b> .
<b>Health Check Disabled</b>	
	
When <b>Disabled</b> is chosen in the <b>Method</b> field, the WAN connection will always be considered as up. The connection will <b>NOT</b> be treated as down in the event of IP routing errors.	
<b>Health Check Method: PING</b>	
	
<b>PING Hosts</b>	ICMP ping packets will be issued to test the connectivity with a configurable target IP address or hostname. A WAN connection is considered as up if ping responses are received from either one or both of the ping hosts.  This setting specifies IP addresses or hostnames with which connectivity is to be tested via ICMP ping. If <b>Use first two DNS servers as Ping Hosts</b> is checked, the target ping host will be the first DNS server for the corresponding WAN connection. Reliable ping hosts with a high uptime should be considered. By default, the first two DNS servers of the WAN connection are used as the ping hosts.
<b>Health Check Method: DNS Lookup</b>	
	
DNS lookups will be issued to test connectivity with target DNS servers. The connection will be treated as up if DNS responses are received from one or both of the servers, regardless of whether the result was positive or negative.	

### Health Check DNS Servers

This field allows you to specify two DNS hosts' IP addresses with which connectivity is to be tested via DNS Lookup.

If **Use first two DNS servers as Health Check DNS Servers** is checked, the first two DNS servers will be the DNS lookup targets for checking a connection's health. If the box is not checked, **Host 1** must be filled, while a value for **Host 2** is optional.

If **Include public DNS servers** is selected and no response is received from all specified DNS servers, DNS lookups will also be issued to some public DNS servers. A WAN connection will be treated as down only if there is also no response received from the public DNS servers.

Connections will be considered as up if DNS responses are received from any one of the health check DNS servers, regardless of a positive or negative result. By default, the first two DNS servers of the WAN connection are used as the health check DNS servers.

### Health Check Method: HTTP

Health Check Method	<input type="text" value="HTTP"/>
URL 1	<input type="text" value="http://"/> Matching String: <input type="checkbox"/>
URL 2	<input type="text" value="http://"/> Matching String: <input type="checkbox"/>

HTTP connections will be issued to test connectivity with configurable URLs and strings to match.

### URL 1

#### WAN Settings>WAN Edit>Health Check Settings>URL1

The URL will be retrieved when performing an HTTP health check. When **String to Match** is left blank, a health check will pass if the HTTP return code is between 200 and 299 (Note: HTTP redirection codes 301 or 302 are treated as failures). When **String to Match** is filled, a health check will pass if the HTTP return code is between 200 and 299 and if the HTTP response content contains the string.

### URL 2

#### WAN Settings>WAN Edit>Health Check Settings>URL2

If **URL2** is also provided, a health check will pass if either one of the tests passed.

Other Health Check Settings	
Timeout	10 second(s)
Health Check Interval	5 second(s)
Health Check Retries	3
Recovery Retries	3

<b>Timeout</b>	This setting specifies the timeout in seconds for ping/DNS lookup requests. The default timeout is <b>5 seconds</b> .
<b>Health Check Interval</b>	This setting specifies the time interval in seconds between ping or DNS lookup requests. The default health check interval is <b>5 seconds</b> .
<b>Health Check Retries</b>	This setting specifies the number of consecutive ping/DNS lookup timeouts after which the Peplink Balance will treat the corresponding WAN connection as down. Default health retries is set to <b>3</b> . Using the default <b>Health Retries</b> setting of <b>3</b> , the corresponding WAN connection will be treated as down after three consecutive timeouts.
<b>Recovery Retries</b>	This setting specifies the number of consecutive successful ping/DNS lookup responses that must be received before the Peplink Balance treats a previously down WAN connection as up again. By default, <b>Recover Retries</b> is set to <b>3</b> . Using the default setting, a WAN connection that is treated as down will be considered as up again upon receiving three consecutive successful ping/DNS lookup responses.

**Note**

If a WAN connection goes down, all of the WAN connections not set with a **Connection Type** of **Always-on** will also be brought up until any one of higher priority WAN connections is up and found to be healthy. This design could increase overall network availability.

For example, if WAN1, WAN2, and WAN3 have connection types of **Always-on**, **Backup Priority Group 1**, and **Backup Priority Group 2**, respectively, when WAN1 goes down, WAN2 and WAN3 will try to connect. If WAN3 is connected first, WAN2 will still be kept connecting. If WAN2 is connected, WAN3 will disconnect or abort making connection.

**Automatic Public DNS Server Check on DNS Test Failure**

When the health check method is set to **DNS Lookup** and checks fail, the Balance will automatically perform DNS lookups on some public DNS servers. If the tests are successful, the WAN may not be down, but rather the target DNS server malfunctioned. You will see the following warning message on the main page:

**⚠ Failed to receive DNS response from the health-check DNS servers for WAN connection 3. But public DNS server lookup test via the WAN passed. So please check the DNS server settings.**

## 12.4 Bandwidth Allowance Monitor

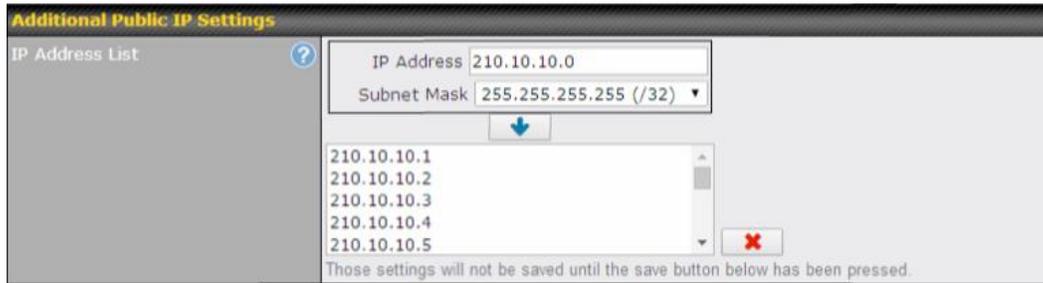
The Bandwidth Allowance Monitor helps track your network usage. Please refer to [Section 26.8](#) to view usage statistics.

Bandwidth Allowance Monitor Settings	
Bandwidth Allowance Monitor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Action	<input type="checkbox"/> Email notification is currently disabled. You can get notified when usage hits 75%/95% of monthly allowance by enabling <a href="#">Email Notification</a> . <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance
Start Day	On <input type="text" value="1st"/> of each month at 00:00 midnight
Monthly Allowance	<input type="text" value="100"/> <input type="text" value="GB"/>

Bandwidth Allowance Monitor	
<b>Action</b>	<p>If <b>Email Notification</b> is enabled, you will be notified by email when usage hits 75% and 95% of the monthly allowance.</p> <p>If <b>Disconnect when usage hits 100% of monthly allowance</b> is checked, this WAN connection will be disconnected automatically when the usage hits the monthly allowance. It will not resume connection unless this option has been turned off or the usage has been reset when a new billing cycle starts.</p>
<b>Start Day</b>	This option allows you to define which day of the month each billing cycle begins.
<b>Monthly Allowance</b>	This field is for defining the maximum bandwidth usage allowed for the WAN connection each month.

Disclaimer	
<p>Due to different network protocol overheads and conversions, the amount of data reported by this Peplink device is not representative of actual billable data usage as metered by your network provider. Peplink disclaims any obligation or responsibility for any events arising from use of the numbers shown here.</p>	

## 12.5 Additional Public IP Settings



### Additional Public IP Settings

#### IP Address List

**IP Address List** represents the list of fixed Internet IP addresses assigned by the ISP in the event that more than one Internet IP address is assigned to this WAN connection. Enter the fixed Internet IP addresses and the corresponding subnet mask, and then click the **Down Arrow** button to populate IP address entries to the **IP Address List**.

## 12.6 Dynamic DNS Settings

The Peplink Balance allows registering domain name relationships to dynamic DNS service providers. Through registration with dynamic DNS service provider(s), the default public Internet IP address of each WAN connection can be associated with a hostname. With dynamic DNS service enabled for a WAN connection, you can connect to your WAN's IP address externally even if its IP address is dynamic. You must register for an account from the listed dynamic DNS service providers before enabling this option.

If the WAN connection's IP address is a reserved private IP address (i.e., behind a NAT router), the public IP of each WAN will be automatically reported to the DNS service provider.

Either upon a change in IP addresses or every 23 days without link reconnection, the Peplink Balance will connect to the dynamic DNS service provider to update the provider's IP address records.

The settings for dynamic DNS service provider(s) and the association of hostname(s) are configured via **Network>Interfaces>WAN>Dynamic DNS Settings**.



If your desired provider is not listed, you may check with [DNS-O-Matic](#). This service supports updating 30 other dynamic DNS service providers. (Note: Peplink is not affiliated with DNS-O-Matic.)

Dynamic DNS Settings	
Service Provider	DNS-O-Matic
Username	<input type="text"/>
Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>
Update All Hosts	<input type="checkbox"/>
Hosts	<input type="text"/>

Dynamic DNS Settings	
<b>Service Provider</b>	<p>This setting specifies the dynamic DNS service provider to be used for the WAN. Supported providers are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• changeip.com</li> <li>• dyndns.org</li> <li>• no-ip.org</li> <li>• tzo.com</li> <li>• DNS-O-Matic</li> </ul> <p>Select <b>Disabled</b> to disable this feature.</p>
<b>User ID / User / Email</b>	This setting specifies the registered user name for the dynamic DNS service.
<b>Password / Pass / TZO Key</b>	This setting specifies the password for the dynamic DNS service.
<b>Update All Hosts</b>	Check this box to automatically update all hosts.
<b>Hosts / Domain</b>	This setting specifies a list of hostnames or domains to be associated with the public Internet IP address of the WAN connection.

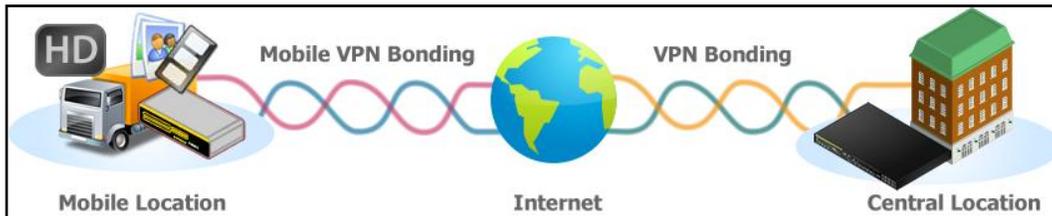
**Important Note**

In order to use dynamic DNS services, appropriate hostname registration(s), as well as a valid account with a supported dynamic DNS service provider, are required.

A dynamic DNS update is performed whenever a WAN's IP address is changed, such as when an IP is changed after a DHCP IP refresh or reconnection.

Due to dynamic DNS service providers' policies, a dynamic DNS host expires automatically when the host record has not been updated for a long time. Therefore, the Peplink Balance performs an update every 23 days, even if a WAN's IP address did not change.

## 13 PepVPN with Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™



Peplink Balance bandwidth bonding SpeedFusion™ functionality securely connects one or more branch offices to your company's main headquarters or to other branches. The data, voice, and video communications between these locations are kept confidential across the public Internet.

The bandwidth bonding SpeedFusion™ of the Peplink Balance is specifically designed for multi-WAN environments. The Peplink Balance can bond all WAN connections' bandwidth for routing SpeedFusion™ traffic. Unless all the WAN connections of one site are down, the Peplink Balance can keep the VPN up and running. Bandwidth bonding is enabled by default.

### 13.1 SpeedFusion™ Settings

The Peplink Balance 380, 580, 710, 1350, and 2500, as well as the MediaFast 200 and 500, support making multiple SpeedFusion™ connections with a remote Peplink Balance 210, 310, 380, 580, 710, 1350, 2500, MediaFast 200 or 500, or a Pepwave MAX mobile router. The Peplink Balance 210 and 310 support making two SpeedFusion™ connections with a remote Peplink Balance 210, 310, 380, 580, 710, 1350, 2500, MediaFast 200 or 500, or a Pepwave MAX mobile router.

A Peplink Balance that supports multiple VPN connections can act as a central hub which connects branch offices. For example, if Branch Office A and Branch Office B make VPN connections to Headquarters C, both branch office LAN subnets and the subnets behind them (i.e., static routes) will also be advertised to Headquarters C and the other branches. So Branch Office A will be able to access Branch Office B via Headquarters C in this case.

The local LAN subnet and subnets behind the LAN (defined under **Static Route** on the LAN settings page) will be advertised to the VPN. All VPN members (branch offices and headquarters) will be able to route to local subnets.

Note that all LAN subnets and the subnets behind them must be unique. Otherwise, VPN members will not be able to access each other.

All data can be routed over the VPN with 256-bit AES encryption standard. To configure this, navigate to **Network>SpeedFusion™**.

### PepVPN with SpeedFusion™



 InControl management enabled. Settings can now be configured on [InControl](#).

Profile	Remote ID	Remote Address(es)	
 FL Office	Balance_20D3		
 NY Office	Balance_FBDB		

---

#### SpeedFusion™

Local ID	 Balance_8B8E	
----------	--	---

---

#### Link Failure Detection

Link Failure Detection Time 

- Recommended (Approx. 15 secs)
- Fast (Approx. 6 secs)
- Faster (Approx. 2 secs)
- Extreme (Under 1 sec)

Shorter detection time incurs more health checks and higher bandwidth overhead

To configure a new SpeedFusion™ profile, navigate to **Network>SpeedFusion™>New Profile**.

PepVPN Profile	
Name	<input type="text"/>
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SpeedFusion™	Supported
Encryption	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 256-bit AES <input type="radio"/> OFF
Authentication	<input checked="" type="radio"/> By Remote ID only <input type="radio"/> Pre-shared Key <input type="radio"/> X.509
Remote ID	<input type="text"/>
NAT Mode	<input type="checkbox"/>
Remote IP Address / Host Names (Optional)	<input type="text"/> <small>If this field is empty, this field on the remote unit must be filled</small>
Data Port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom <input type="text"/>
Layer 2 Bridging	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bridging Port	<input checked="" type="radio"/> LAN
VLAN Tagging	<input type="text" value="No VLAN"/> <a href="#">More...</a>
STP	<input type="checkbox"/>
Preserve LAN Settings Upon Connected	<input type="checkbox"/> <small>After this VPN profile is established, most routing functionalities will cease to work. The device will practically become an Ethernet extender of the remote unit.</small>
Configure	<input type="text" value="Using DHCP"/>

A list of defined SpeedFusion™ connection profiles and **aLink Failure Detection Time** option will be shown. Click the **New Profile** button to create a new VPN connection profile for making a VPN connection to a remote Peplink Balance via the available WAN connections. Each profile is for making a VPN connection with one remote Peplink Balance.

PepVPN Profile Settings	
<b>Name</b>	This field is for specifying a name to represent this profile. The name can be any combination of alphanumeric characters (0-9, A-Z, a-z), underscores (_), dashes (-), and/or non-leading/trailing spaces ( ).
<b>Active</b>	When this box is checked, this VPN connection profile will be enabled. Otherwise, it will be disabled.
<b>SpeedFusion™</b>	This field indicates whether this device supports SpeedFusion or not.
<b>Encryption</b>	By default, VPN traffic is encrypted with <b>256-bit AES</b> . If <b>Off</b> is selected on both sides of a VPN connection, no encryption will be applied.
<b>Authentication</b>	Select from <b>By Remote ID Only</b> , <b>Pre-shared Key</b> , or <b>X.509</b> to specify the method the Peplink Balance will use to authenticate peers. When selecting <b>By Remote ID Only</b> , be sure to enter a unique peer ID number in the <b>Remote ID</b> field.

<b>Remote ID</b>	To allow the Peplink Balance to establish a VPN connection with a specific remote peer using a unique identifying number, enter the peer's ID or serial number here.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	This optional field becomes available when <b>Pre-shared Key</b> is selected as the Peplink Balance's VPN <b>Authentication</b> method, as explained above. <b>Pre-shared Key</b> defines the pre-shared key used for this particular VPN connection. The VPN connection's session key will be further protected by the pre-shared key. The connection will be up only if the pre-shared keys on each side match. When the peer is running firmware 5.0+, this setting will be ignored. If you would like to prevent the display of the pre-shared key, check <b>Hide Characters</b> .
<b>Remote ID/Remote Certificate</b>	These optional fields become available when <b>X.509</b> is selected as the Peplink Balance's VPN authentication method, as explained above. To authenticate VPN connections using X.509 certificates, copy and paste certificate details into these fields. To get more information on a listed X.509 certificate, click the <b>Show Details</b> link below the field.
<b>NAT Mode</b>	Check this box to allow the local DHCP server to assign an IP address to the remote peer. When <b>NAT Mode</b> is enabled, all remote traffic over the VPN will be tagged with the assigned IP address using network address translation.
<b>Remote IP Address / Host Names (Optional)</b>	<p>If <b>NAT Mode</b> is not enabled, you can enter a remote peer's WAN IP address or hostname(s) here. If the remote uses more than one address, enter only one of them here. Multiple hostnames are allowed and can be separated by a space character or carriage return. Dynamic-DNS host names are also accepted.</p> <p>This field is optional. With this field filled, the Peplink Balance will initiate connection to each of the remote IP addresses until it succeeds in making a connection. If the field is empty, the Peplink Balance will wait for connection from the remote peer. Therefore, at least one of the two VPN peers must specify this value. Otherwise, VPN connections cannot be established.</p>
<b>Data Port</b>	This field is used to specify a UDP port number for transporting outgoing VPN data. If <b>Default</b> is selected, UDP port 4500 will be used. Port 32015 will be used if the remote unit uses Firmware prior to version 5.4 or if port 4500 is unavailable. If <b>Custom</b> is selected, enter an outgoing port number from 1 to 65535.
<b>Layer 2 Bridging<sup>A</sup></b>	<p>To make this option visible, click the question mark icon appearing at the top right of the <b>PepVPN Profile</b> settings section, and then click the displayed link.</p> <p>When this check box is unchecked, traffic between local and remote networks will be IP forwarded. To bridge the Ethernet network of an Ethernet port on a local and remote network, select <b>Layer 2 Bridging</b>. When this check box is selected, the two networks will become a single LAN, and any broadcast (e.g., ARP requests) or multicast traffic (e.g., Bonjour) will be sent over the VPN.</p>
<b>VLAN Tagging<sup>A</sup></b>	This field specifies the VLAN ID with which the VPN's traffic should be tagged before sending the traffic to the bridge port. If no VLAN tagging is needed, select <b>No VLAN</b> . To define a new VLAN ID, click <b>More...</b> and input the VLAN ID. VLAN IDs that are not referenced by any VPN profiles will be removed from the list automatically. The default value for this field is <b>No VLAN</b> .
<b>STP<sup>A</sup></b>	Checking this box enables spanning tree protocol, used to prevent loops in bridged Ethernet LANs.

**Preserve LAN Settings Upon Connected<sup>A</sup>**

The LAN port is chosen as the bridge port. Selecting this option preserves LAN settings (e.g., LAN port IP address, DHCP server, etc.) when the Layer 2 VPN is connected. Uncheck this option if the LAN IP address and gateway will use remote LAN settings. Check this option if the LAN IP address and local DHCP server should remain unchanged after the VPN is up. If you choose not to preserve LAN settings when the VPN is connected, the device will not act as a router and most Layer 3 routing functions will cease to work.

**Configure<sup>A</sup>**

This setting specifies how a management IP address is acquired for the bridge port in the specified VLAN (if defined) when the Layer 2 bridge is connected. Choosing **As None** will result in no IP address being assigned to the bridge port for the Layer 2 connection.

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature, please click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.

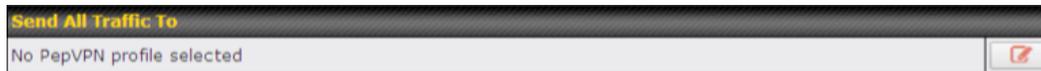
WAN Connection Priority 		
1. WAN1	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
2. WAN2	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
3. WAN3	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
4. WAN4	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
5. WAN5	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
6. WAN6	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
7. WAN7	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼
8. Mobile Internet	Priority: 1 (Highest) ▼	Connect to Remote: All ▼

**WAN Connection Priority**

**WAN Connection Priority**

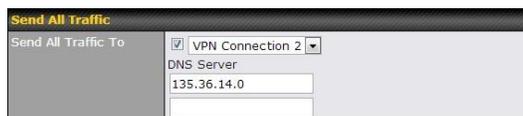
These settings specify the priority of the WAN connections to be used in making VPN bonding connections. A WAN connection will never be used when **OFF** is selected. Only available WAN connections with the highest priority will be utilized.

To allow connection mapping to remote WANs, click the question mark icon found at the top right of this section, and then click the displayed link to reveal the **Connect to Remote** drop-down menu.

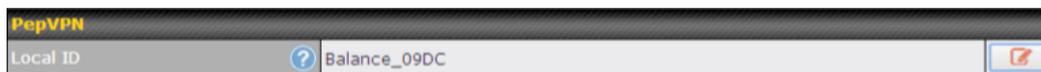


### Send All Traffic To

This feature allows you to redirect all traffic to a specified PepVPN connection. Click the  button to select your connection and the following menu will appear:



You could also specify a DNS server to resolve incoming DNS requests.

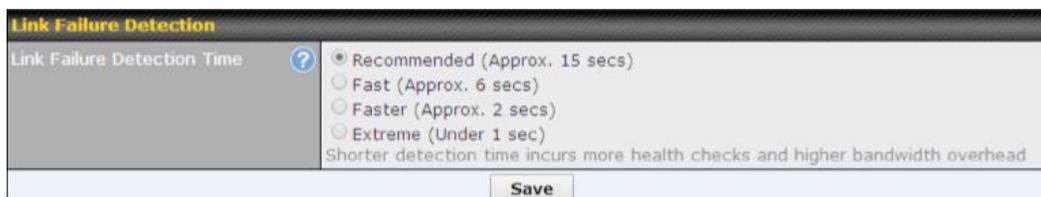


### PepVPN

This feature allows you to change the local ID of a PepVPN connection. Click the  button to select your connection and the following menu will appear:



After updating the local ID, click **Save** to store your changes.



### Link Failure Detection

The bonded VPN can detect routing failures on the path between two sites over each WAN connection. Failed WAN connections will not be used to route VPN traffic. Health check packets are sent to the remote unit to detect any failure. The more frequently checks are sent, the shorter the detection time, although more bandwidth will be consumed.

#### Link Failure Detection Time

When **Recommended** (default) is selected, a health check packet is sent every five seconds, and the expected detection time is 15 seconds.

When **Fast** is selected, a health check packet is sent every three seconds, and the expected detection time is six seconds.

When **Faster** is selected, a health check packet is sent every second, and the expected detection time is two seconds.

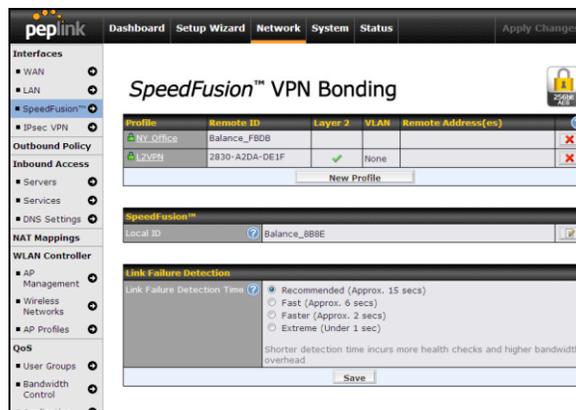
When **Extreme** is selected, a health check packet is sent every 0.1 second, and the expected detection time is less than one second.

### Important Note

Peplink proprietary SpeedFusion™ uses TCP port 32015 and UDP port 4500 for establishing VPN connections. If you have a firewall in front of your Peplink Balance devices, you will need to add firewall rules for these ports and protocols to allow inbound and outbound traffic to pass through the firewall.

### Tip

Watch a video walkthrough of setting up a SpeedFusion™ VPN on our [YouTube Channel!](#)



[http://youtu.be/xNaq13FWu\\_g](http://youtu.be/xNaq13FWu_g)

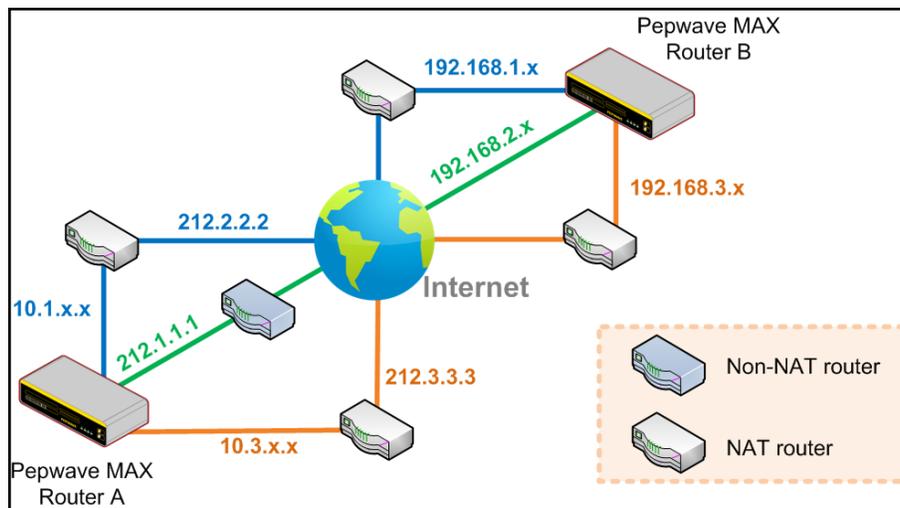
## 13.2 The Peplink Balance Behind a NAT Router

The Peplink Balance supports establishing SpeedFusion™ over WAN connections which are behind a NAT (network address translation) router.

To enable a WAN connection behind a NAT router to accept VPN connections, you can configure the NAT router in front of the WAN connection to inbound port-forward TCP port 32015 to the Peplink Balance.

If one or more WAN connections on Unit A can accept VPN connections (by means of port forwarding or not), while none of the WAN connections on the peer Unit B can do so, you should enter all of Unit A's public IP addresses or hostnames into Unit B's **Remote IP Addresses / Host Names** field. Leave the field in Unit A blank. With this setting, a SpeedFusion™ connection can be set up and all WAN connections on both sides will be utilized.

See the following diagram for an example of this setup in use:



One of the WANs connected to Balance A is non-NAT'd (212.1.1.1). The rest of the WANs connected to Balance A and all WANs connected to Balance B are NAT'd. In this case, the **Peer IP Addresses / Host Names** field for Balance B should be filled with all of Balance A's hostnames or public IP addresses (i.e., 212.1.1.1, 212.2.2.2, and 212.3.3.3), and the field in Balance A can be left blank. The two NAT routers on WAN1 and WAN3 connected to Balance A should inbound port-forward TCP port 32015 to Balance A so that all WANs will be utilized in establishing the VPN.

### 13.3 SpeedFusion™ Status

SpeedFusion™ status is shown in the **Dashboard**. The connection status of each connection profile is shown as below.

SpeedFusion™		Status
FL Office		Established
NY Office		Established

SpeedFusion™ connection status is also shown on the LCD panel of the Peplink Balance 380, 580, 710, 1350, 2500, and MediaFast 200 and 500.

After clicking the **Status** button at the top right corner of the SpeedFusion™ table, you will be forwarded to **Status>SpeedFusion™**, where you can view subnet and WAN connection information for each VPN peer. Please refer to **Section 26.5** for details.

PepVPN with SpeedFusion™		
Profile	Remote Networks	
 ▶ NY Office	192.168.3.0/24	
 ▶ FL Office	192.168.50.0/24	

#### IP Subnets Must Be Unique Among VPN Peers

The entire interconnected SpeedFusion™ network is a single non-NAT IP network. Avoid duplicating subnets in your sites to prevent connectivity problems when accessing those subnets.

## 14 IPsec VPN

Peplink Balance IPsec VPN functionality securely connects one or more branch offices to your company's main headquarters or to other branches. Data, voice, and video communications between these locations are kept safe and confidential across the public Internet.

IPsecVPN on the Peplink Balance is specially designed for multi-WAN environments. For instance, if a user sets up multiple IPsec profiles for his multi-WAN environment and WAN1 is connected and healthy, IPsec traffic will go through this link. However, should unforeseen problems (e.g., unplugged cables or ISP problems) cause WAN1 to go down, our IPsec implementation will make use of WAN2 and WAN3 for failover.

### 14.1 IPsec VPN Settings

All Peplink products can make multiple IPsec VPN connections with Peplink routers, as well as Cisco and Juniper routers.

Note that all LAN subnets and the subnets behind them must be unique. Otherwise, VPN members will not be able to access each other.

All data can be routed over the VPN with a selection of encryption standards, such as 3DES, AES-128, and AES-256.

To configure, navigate to **Network>IPsec VPN**.



A **NAT-Traversal** option and list of defined **IPsecVPN** profiles will be shown.

**NAT-Traversal** should be enabled if your system is behind a NAT router.

Click the **New Profile** button to create new IPsec VPN profiles that make VPN connections to remote Peplink Balance, Cisco, or Juniper Routers via available WAN connections. To edit any of the profiles, click on its associated connection name in the leftmost column.

IPsec VPN Profile										
Name	Profile 1									
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>									
Connect Upon Disconnection of	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 2									
Remote Gateway IP Address / Host Name	12.12.12.12									
Local Networks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 192.168.1.0/24 <input type="checkbox"/> [Empty]									
Remote Networks	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>192.167.11.193</td> <td>255.255.255.0 (/24)</td> <td>✖</td> </tr> <tr> <td>[Empty]</td> <td>255.255.255.0 (/24)</td> <td>+</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Network	Subnet Mask		192.167.11.193	255.255.255.0 (/24)	✖	[Empty]	255.255.255.0 (/24)	+
Network	Subnet Mask									
192.167.11.193	255.255.255.0 (/24)	✖								
[Empty]	255.255.255.0 (/24)	+								
Authentication	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Preshared Key <input type="radio"/> X.509 Certificate									
Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Main Mode (All WANs need to have Static IP) <input type="radio"/> Aggressive Mode									
Force UDP Encapsulation	<input type="checkbox"/>									
Preshared Key	***** <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters									
Local ID	[Empty]									
Remote ID	[Empty]									
Phase 1 (IKE) Proposal	1 AES-256 & SHA1 2 -----									
Phase 1 DH Group	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Group 2: MODP 1024 <input type="checkbox"/> Group 5: MODP 1536									
Phase 1 SA Lifetime	3600 seconds <b>Default</b>									
Phase 2 (ESP) Proposal	1 AES-256 & SHA1 2 -----									
Phase 2 PFS Group	<input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Group 2: MODP 1024 <input type="radio"/> Group 5: MODP 1536									
Phase 2 SA Lifetime	28800 seconds <b>Default</b>									

IPsec VPN Settings	
<b>Name</b>	This field is for specifying a local name to represent this connection profile.
<b>Active</b>	When this box is checked, this IPsec VPN connection profile will be enabled. Otherwise, it will be disabled.
<b>Connect Upon Disconnection of</b>	Check this box and select a WAN to connect to this VPN automatically when the specified WAN is disconnected.
<b>Remote</b>	Enter the remote peer's public IP address. For <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , this is optional.

<b>Gateway IP Address / Host Name</b>	
<b>Local Networks</b>	Enter the local LAN subnets here. If you have defined static routes, they will be shown here.
<b>Remote Networks</b>	Enter the LAN and subnets that are located at the remote site here.
<b>Authentication</b>	To access your VPN, clients will need to authenticate by your choice of methods. Choose between the <b>Preshared Key</b> and <b>X.509 Certificate</b> methods of authentication.
<b>Mode</b>	Choose <b>Main Mode</b> if both IPsec peers use static IP addresses. Choose <b>Aggressive Mode</b> if one of the IPsec peers uses dynamic IP addresses.
<b>Force UDP Encapsulation</b>	For forced UDP encapsulation regardless of NAT-traversal, tick this checkbox.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	This defines the peer authentication pre-shared key used to authenticate this VPN connection. The connection will be up only if the pre-shared keys on each side match.
<b>Remote Certificate (pem encoded)</b>	Available only when <b>X.509 Certificate</b> is chosen as the <b>Authentication</b> method, this field allows you to paste a valid X.509 certificate.
<b>Local ID</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this field can be left blank. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , if <b>Remote Gateway IP Address</b> is filled on this end and the peer end, this field can be left blank. Otherwise, this field is typically a U-FQDN.
<b>Remote ID</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this field can be left blank. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , if <b>Remote Gateway IP Address</b> is filled on this end and the peer end, this field can be left blank. Otherwise, this field is typically a U-FQDN.
<b>Phase 1 (IKE) Proposal</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this allows setting up to six encryption standards, in descending order of priority, to be used in initial connection key negotiations. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , only one selection is permitted.
<b>Phase 1 DH Group</b>	This is the Diffie-Hellman group used within IKE. This allows two parties to establish a shared secret over an insecure communications channel. The larger the group number, the higher the security. <b>Group 2:1024-bit</b> is the default value. <b>Group 5:1536-bit</b> is the alternative option.
<b>Phase 1 SA Lifetime</b>	This setting specifies the lifetime limit of this Phase 1 Security Association. By default, it is set at <b>3600</b> seconds.
<b>Phase 2 (ESP) Proposal</b>	In <b>Main Mode</b> , this allows setting up to six encryption standards, in descending order of priority, to be used for the IP data that is being transferred. In <b>Aggressive Mode</b> , only one selection is permitted.
<b>Phase 2 PFS</b>	Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) ensures that if a key was compromised, the attacker will be

**Group** able to access only the data protected by that key.  
**None** - Do not request for PFS when initiating connection. However, since there is no valid reason to refuse PFS, the system will allow the connection to use PFS if requested by the remote peer. This is the default value.  
**Group 2:** 1024-bit Diffie-Hellman group. The larger the group number, the higher the security.  
**Group 5:1536-bit** is the third option.

**Phase 2 SA Lifetime** This setting specifies the lifetime limit of this Phase 2 Security Association. By default, it is set at **28800** seconds.

WAN Connection Priority	
Priority	WAN Selection
1	WAN1 <input type="button" value="v"/>
2	----- <input type="button" value="v"/>

### WAN Connection Priority

This feature enables you to prioritize the WAN connections used by this VPN profile.

## 14.2 IPsec Status

**IPsec Status** shows the current connection status of each connection profile and is displayed at **Status>IPsec VPN**.

## 15 Outbound Policy Management

The Peplink Balance can flexibly manage and load balance outbound traffic among WAN connections.

### Important Note

Outbound policy is applied only when more than one WAN connection is active.

The settings for managing and load balancing outbound traffic are located at **Network>Outbound Policy**.



Outbound policies for managing and load balancing outbound traffic are located at **Network>Outbound Policy**.



## 15.1 Outbound Policy

There are three main selections for the outbound traffic policy:

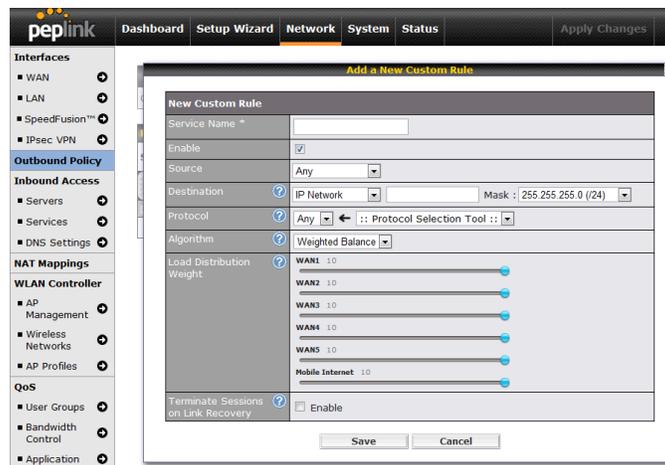
- High Application Compatibility
- Normal Application Compatibility
- Custom

Outbound Policy Settings	
<b>High Application Compatibility</b>	Outbound traffic from a source LAN device is routed through the same WAN connection regardless of the destination Internet IP address and protocol. This option provides the highest application compatibility.
<b>Normal Application Compatibility</b>	Outbound traffic from a source LAN device to the same destination Internet IP address will be routed through the same WAN connection persistently, regardless of protocol. This option provides high compatibility to most applications, and users still benefit from WAN link load balancing when multiple Internet servers are accessed.
<b>Custom</b>	Outbound traffic behavior can be managed by defining rules in a custom rule table. A default rule can be defined for connections that cannot be matched with any of the rules.

The default policy is **Normal Application Compatibility**.

### Tip

Want to know more about creating outbound rules? Visit our [YouTube Channel](#) for a video tutorial!



[http://youtu.be/rKH4AS\\_bQnE](http://youtu.be/rKH4AS_bQnE)

## 15.2 Custom Rules for Outbound Policy

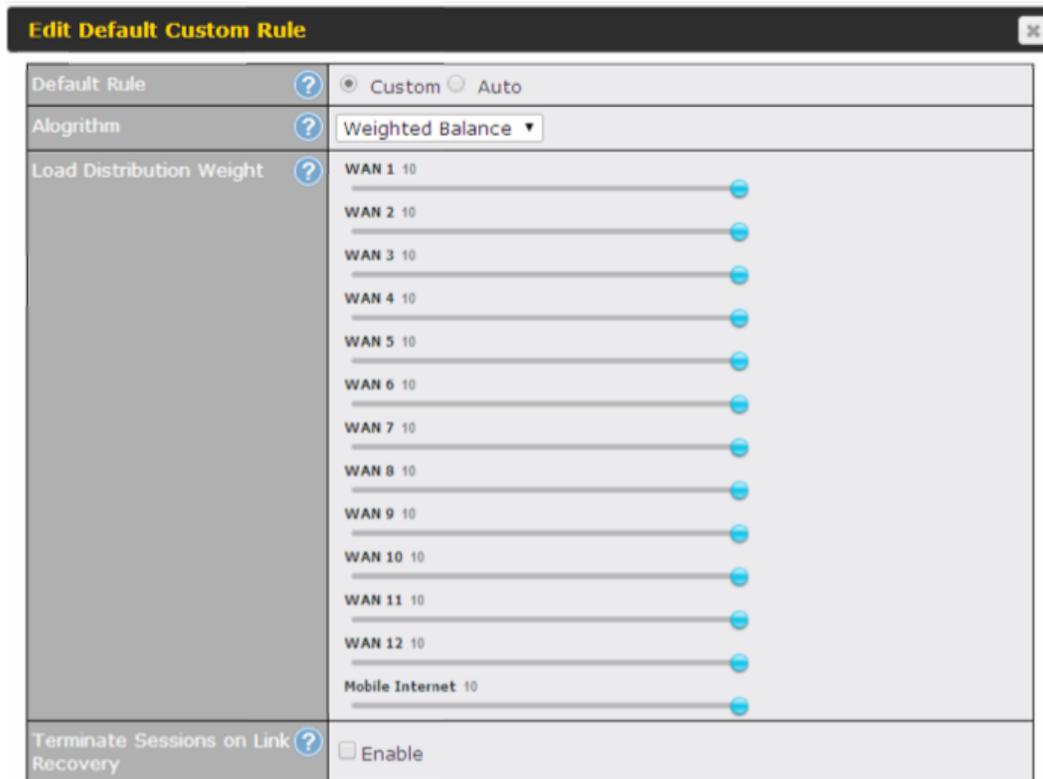
Click  in the **Outbound Policy** form. Choose **Custom** and press the **Save** button. The following screen will then be displayed:



Service	Algorithm	Source	Destination	Protocol / Port	
HTTPS Persistence	Persistence (Src) (Auto)	Any	Any	TCP 443	
Default	(Auto)				

**Add Rule**

The bottom-most rule is **Default**. Edit this rule to change the device's default manner of controlling outbound traffic for all connections that do not match any of the rules above it. Under the **Service** heading, **Default** to change these settings. To rearrange the priority of outbound rules, drag and drop them into the desired sequence.



**Edit Default Custom Rule**

Default Rule  Custom  Auto

Algorithm

Load Distribution Weight

- WAN 1 10
- WAN 2 10
- WAN 3 10
- WAN 4 10
- WAN 5 10
- WAN 6 10
- WAN 7 10
- WAN 8 10
- WAN 9 10
- WAN 10 10
- WAN 11 10
- WAN 12 10
- Mobile Internet 10

Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery  Enable

**Save** **Cancel**

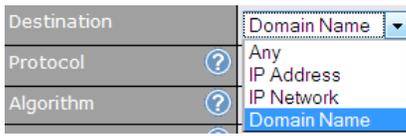
By default, **Auto** is selected for as the **Default Rule**. You can select **Custom** to change the algorithm to be used. Please refer to the upcoming sections for the details on the available algorithms.

To create a custom rule, click **Add Rule** at the bottom of the table. The following window will be displayed:

**Add a New Custom Rule**
✕

Service Name *	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Source	Any ▾
Destination	<span style="border: 1px solid orange; padding: 2px;">Domain Name ▾</span> <input type="text"/>
Protocol	Any ▾ ◀ :: Protocol Selection Tool :: ▾
Algorithm	Weighted Balance ▾
Load Distribution Weight	<div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; gap: 5px;"> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 1</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 2</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 3</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 4</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 5</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 6</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 7</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 8</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 9</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 10</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 11</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">WAN 12</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <span style="font-size: 0.8em;">Mobile Internet</span> <span style="margin-left: 10px;">10</span> <div style="flex-grow: 1; border-bottom: 1px solid #ccc; position: relative;"> <div style="position: absolute; right: -10px; top: -5px; width: 10px; height: 10px; border-radius: 50%; background-color: #00aaff; opacity: 0.5;"></div> </div> </div> </div>
Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

New Custom Rule Settings	
<b>Service Name</b>	This setting specifies the name of the outbound traffic rule.
<b>Enable</b>	This setting specifies whether the outbound traffic rule takes effect. When <b>Enable</b> is checked, the rule takes effect: traffic is matched and actions are taken by the Peplink Balance based on the other parameters of the rule. When <b>Enable</b> is unchecked, the rule does not take effect: the Peplink Balance disregards the other parameters of the rule.
<b>Source</b>	This setting specifies the source IP address, IP network, or MAC address for traffic that matches the rule.

<b>Destination</b>	<p>This setting specifies the destination IP address, IP network, or domain name for traffic that matches the rule.</p>  <p>If <b>Domain Name</b> is chosen and a domain name, such as <i>foobar.com</i>, is entered, any outgoing accesses to <i>foobar.com</i> and <i>*.foobar.com</i> will match this criterion. You may enter a wildcard (<i>*</i>) at the end of a domain name to match any host with a name having the domain name in the middle. If you enter <i>foobar.*</i>, for example, <i>www.foobar.com</i>, <i>www.foobar.co.jp</i>, or <i>foobar.co.uk</i> will also match. Placing wildcards in any other position is not supported.</p> <p>NOTE: if a server has one Internet IP address and multiple server names, and if one of the names is defined here, accesses to any one of the server names will also match this rule.</p>
<b>Protocol and Port</b>	<p>This setting specifies the IP protocol and port of traffic that matches this rule. You may select common protocols from the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu.</p>
<b>Algorithm</b>	<p>This setting specifies the behavior of the Peplink Balance for the custom rule. One of the following values can be selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Weighted Balance</li><li>• Persistence</li><li>• Enforced</li><li>• Priority</li><li>• Overflow</li><li>• Least Used (not applicable to Balance 20/30/30 LTE/50)</li><li>• Lowest Latency (not applicable to Balance 20/30/30 LTE/50)</li></ul> <p>The upcoming sections detail the listed algorithms.</p>
<b>Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery</b>	<p>This setting specifies whether to terminate existing IP sessions on a less preferred WAN connection in the event that a more preferred WAN connection is recovered. This setting is applicable to the <b>Weighted</b>, <b>Persistence</b>, and <b>Priority</b> algorithms.</p> <p>By default, this setting is disabled. In this case, existing IP sessions will not be terminated or affected when any other WAN connection is recovered. When this setting is enabled, existing IP sessions may be terminated when another WAN connection is recovered, such that only the preferred healthy WAN connection(s) is used at any point in time.</p>

### 15.2.1 Algorithm: Weighted Balance

This setting specifies the ratio of WAN connection usage to be applied on the specified IP protocol and port. This setting is applicable only when **Algorithm** is set to **Weighted Balance**.



The amount of matching traffic that is distributed to a WAN connection is proportional to the weight of the WAN connection relative to the total weight. Use the sliders to change each WAN's weight.

For example, with the following weight settings on a Peplink Balance 310:

- WAN1: 10
- WAN2: 10
- WAN3: 5

Total weight is  $25 = (10 + 10 + 5)$

Matching traffic distributed to WAN1 is  $40\% = (10 / 25) \times 100\%$ .

Matching traffic distributed to WAN2 is  $40\% = (10 / 25) \times 100\%$ .

Matching traffic distributed to WAN3 is  $20\% = (5 / 25) \times 100\%$ .

### 15.2.2 Algorithm: Persistence

The configuration of persistent services is the solution to the few situations where link load distribution for Internet services is undesirable. For example, for security reasons, many e-banking and other secure websites terminate the session when the client computer's Internet IP address changes mid-session.

In general, different Internet IP addresses represent different computers. The security concern is that an IP address change during a session may be the result of an unauthorized intrusion attempt. Therefore, to prevent damages from the potential intrusion, the session is terminated upon the detection of an IP address change.

The Peplink Balance can be configured to distribute data traffic across multiple WAN connections. Also, the Internet IP depends on the WAN connections over which communication actually takes place. As a result, a LAN client computer behind the Peplink Balance may communicate using multiple Internet IP addresses. For example, a LAN client computer behind a Peplink Balance 310 with three WAN connections may communicate on the Internet using three different IP addresses.

With the persistence feature of Peplink Balance, rules can be configured to enable client computers to persistently utilize the same WAN connections for e-banking and other secure websites. As a result, a client computer will communicate using one IP address, eliminating the issues mentioned above.



There are two persistent modes:**By Source**and**By Destination**.

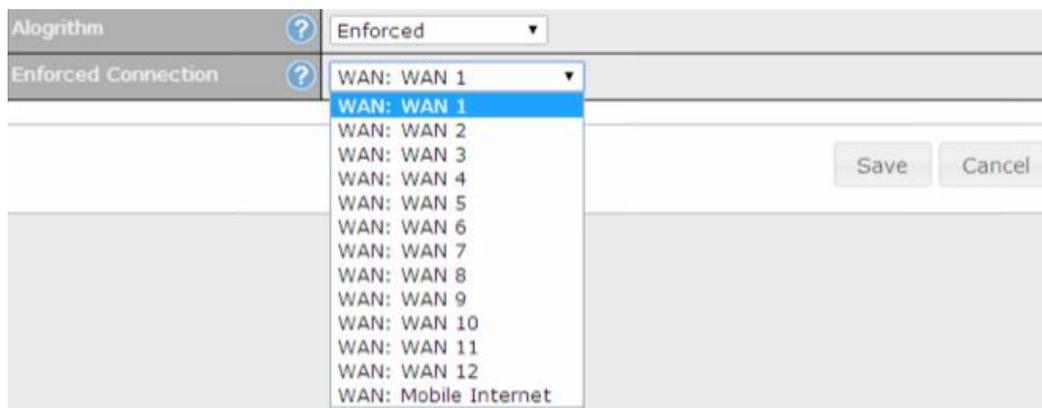
<b>By Source:</b>	The same WAN connection will be used for traffic matching the rule and originating from the same machine, regardless of its destination. This option will provide the highest level of application compatibility.
<b>By Destination:</b>	The same WAN connection will be used for traffic matching the rule, originating from the same machine, and going to the same destination. This option can better distribute loads to WAN connections when there are only a few client machines.

The default mode is **By Source**.

When there are multiple client requests, they can be distributed (persistently) to WAN connections with a weight. If you choose **Auto** in **Load Distribution**, the weights will be automatically adjusted according to each WAN’s **DownloadBandwidth**, which is specified in the WAN settings page (see **Section 12Configuring the WAN Interface(s)**). If you choose**Custom**, you can customize the weight of each WAN manually using the provided sliders.

### 15.2.3 Algorithm: Enforced

This setting specifies the WAN connection usage to be applied on the specified IP protocol andport. This setting is applicable only when**Algorithm** is set to**Enforced**.



Matching traffic will be routed through the specified WAN connection, regardless of the health check status of the WAN connection.

Starting fromFirmware 5.2, outbound traffic can be enforced to go through a specifiedSpeedFusion™ connection. **(Available onthe Peplink Balance 210+ and MediaFast 200+)**

### 15.2.4 Algorithm: Priority

This setting specifies the priority of the WAN connections used to route the specified network service. The highest priority WAN connection available will always be used for routing the specified type of traffic. A lower priority WAN connection will be used only when all higher priority connections have become unavailable.

Algorithm	?	Priority	▼
Priority Order	?	Highest Priority	Not In Use
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 7
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 2	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 3	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 4	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 5	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 6	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 8	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 9	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 10	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 11	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: WAN 12	
		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN: Mobile Internet	
		Lowest Priority	

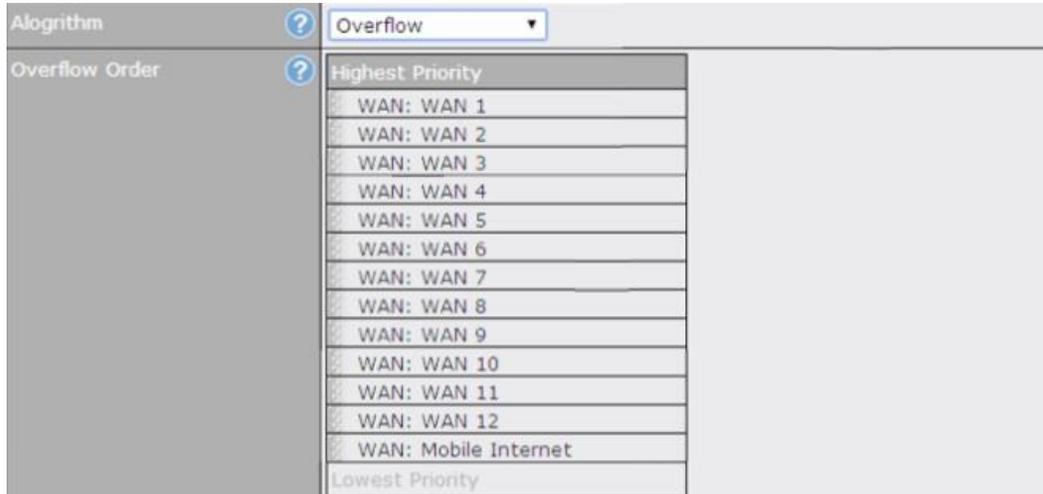
Starting from Firmware 5.2, outbound traffic can be prioritized to go through SpeedFusion™ connection(s). By default, VPN connections are not included in the priority list. **(Available on the Peplink Balance 210+ and MediaFast 200+)**

#### Tip

Configure multiple distribution rules to accommodate different kinds of services.

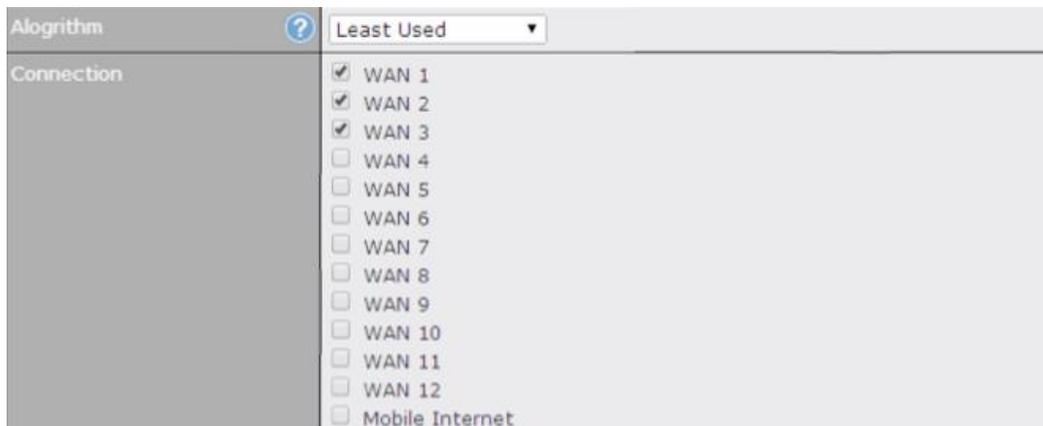
### 15.2.5 Algorithm: Overflow

The traffic matching this rule will be routed through the healthy WAN connection that has the highest priority and is not in full load. When this connection gets saturated, new sessions will be routed to the next healthy WAN connection that is not in full load.



Drag and drop to specify the order of WAN connections to be used for routing traffic. Only the highest priority healthy connection that is not in full load will be used.

### 15.2.6 Algorithm: Least Used



The traffic matching this rule will be routed through the healthy WAN connection that is selected in **Connection** and has the most available download bandwidth. The available download bandwidth of a WAN connection is calculated from the total download bandwidth specified on the WAN settings page and the current download usage. The available bandwidth and WAN selection is determined every time an IP session is made.

### 15.2.7 Algorithm: Lowest Latency



The traffic matching this rule will be routed through the healthy WAN connection that is selected in **Connection** and has the lowest latency. Latency checking packets are issued periodically to a nearby router of each WAN connection to determine its latency value. The latency of a WAN is the packet round trip time of the WAN connection. Additional network usage may be incurred as a result.

### Tip

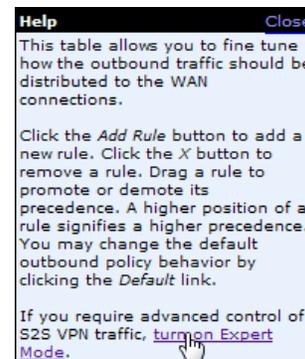
The round trip time of a 6M down /640k uplink can be higher than that of a 2M down /2M up link because the overall round trip time is lengthened by its slower upload bandwidth, despite its higher downlink speed. Therefore, this algorithm is good for two scenarios:

- All WAN connections are symmetric; or
- A latency sensitive application must be routed through the lowest latency WAN, regardless of the WAN's available bandwidth.

## 15.2.8 Expert Mode

**Expert Mode** is available for advanced users. To enable the feature, click on the help icon and click **turn on Expert Mode**.

In Expert Mode, a new special rule, **SpeedFusion™ Routes**, is displayed in the **Custom Rules** table. This rule represents all SpeedFusion™ routes learned from remote VPN peers. By default, this bar is on the top of all custom rules. This position means that traffic for remote VPN subnets will be routed to the corresponding VPN peer. You can create custom **Priority** or **Enforced** rules and move them above the bar to override the SpeedFusion™ routes.



Upon disabling Expert Mode, all rules above the bar will be removed.

**Custom Rules** (Hand icon) Drag and drop rows to change rule order (Help icon)

Service	Algorithm	Source	Destination	Protocol / Port	
HTTPS_Persis...	Persistence (Src) (Auto)	Any	IP Network 192.168.50.0/24	TCP 443	X
Site-to-Site VPN Routes					
Default	Lowest Latency				
<input type="button" value="Add Rule"/>					

## 16 Inbound Access

Inbound access is also known as inbound port address translation. On a NAT WAN connection, all inbound traffic to the server behind the Peplink unit requires inbound access rules.

By the custom definition of servers and services for inbound access, Internet users can access the servers behind PeplinkBalance. Advanced configurations allow inbound access to be distributed among multiple servers on the LAN.

### Important Note

Inbound access applies only to WAN connections that operate in NAT mode. For WAN connections that operate in drop-in mode or IP forwarding, inbound traffic is forwarded to the LAN by default.

### 16.1 Definition of Port Forwarding

Inbound port forwarding rules are defined at **Network>Inbound Access>Port Forwarding**.

Service	IP Address(es)	Server	Protocol	Action
Web	WAN1: Interface IP	192.168.10.1	TCP:80	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
<input type="button" value="Add Service"/>				

To define a new service, click the **Add Service** button. The following screen is displayed:

Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No																												
Service Name *	Web																												
IP Protocol	TCP ← HTTP																												
Port	Single Port Service Port: 80																												
Inbound IP Address(es) * (Require at least one IP address)	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Connection / IP Address(es)</th> <th>All</th> <th>Clear</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.100 (Interface IP)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.66</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.103</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN2</td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN3</td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet</td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connection / IP Address(es)		All	Clear	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.100 (Interface IP)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.66	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.103	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN2		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN3		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Connection / IP Address(es)		All	Clear																										
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.100 (Interface IP)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																										
	<input type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.66	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																										
	<input type="checkbox"/> 218.100.66.103	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																										
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN2		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																										
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN3		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																										
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																										
Server IP Address	192.168.1.10																												
** Required Fields																													
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>																													

### Port Forwarding Settings

#### Enable

This setting specifies whether the inbound service takes effect. When **Enable** is checked, the inbound service takes effect: traffic is matched and actions are taken by the Peplink Balance based on the other parameters of the rule. When this setting is disabled, the inbound service does not take effect: the Peplink Balance disregards the other parameters of the rule.

#### Service Name

This setting identifies the service to the system administrator. Valid values for this setting consist of only alphanumeric and underscore “\_” characters.

**IP Protocol**

The **IP Protocol** setting, along with the **Port** setting, specifies the protocol of the service as TCP, UDP, ICMP, or IP. Traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port(s) is forwarded to the LAN hosts specified by the **Servers** setting.

Please see below for details on the **Port** and **Servers** settings.

Alternatively, the **Protocol Selection Tool** drop-down menu can be used to automatically fill in the protocol and a single port number of common Internet services (e.g. HTTP, HTTPS, etc.) After selecting an item from the **Protocol Selection Tool** drop-down menu, the protocol and port number remain manually modifiable.

**Port**

The **Port** setting specifies the port(s) that correspond to the service, and can be configured to behave in one of the following manners:

**Any Port, Single Port, Port Range, Port Map, and Range Mapping**

Port		Any Port	▼
------	---	----------	---

**Any Port:** all traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol is forwarded to the servers specified by the **Servers** setting. For example, with **IP Protocol** set to **TCP**, and **Port** set to **Any Port**, all TCP traffic is forwarded to the configured servers.

Port		Single Port	▼	Service Port:	<input type="text"/>
------	---	-------------	---	---------------	----------------------

**Single Port:** traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port is forwarded via the same port to the servers specified by the **Servers** setting. For example, with **IP Protocol** set to **TCP**, and **Port** set to **Single Port** and **Service Port** 80, TCP traffic received on port 80 is forwarded to the configured servers via port 80.

Port		Port Range	▼	Service Ports:	<input type="text"/> - <input type="text"/>
------	---	------------	---	----------------	---

**Port Range:** traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port range is forwarded via the same respective ports to the LAN hosts specified by the **Servers** setting. For example, with **IP Protocol** set to **TCP**, and **Port** set to **Port Range** and **Service Ports** 80-88, TCP traffic received on ports 80 through 88 is forwarded to the configured servers via the respective ports.

Port		Port Mapping	▼	Service Port:	<input type="text"/>
				Map to Port:	<input type="text"/>

**Port Mapping:** traffic that is received by Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port is forwarded via a different port to the servers specified by the Servers setting. For example, with IP Protocol set to **TCP**, and Port set to **Port Mapping**, **Service Port** 80, and **Map to Port** 88, TCP traffic on Port 80 is forwarded to the configured servers via Port 88. (Please see below for details on the Servers setting.)

Port		Range Mapping	▼	Service Ports:	<input type="text"/> - <input type="text"/>
				Map to Ports:	<input type="text"/> - <input type="text"/>

**Range Mapping:** traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port range is forwarded via a different port to the servers specified by the **Servers** setting.

**Inbound IP Address(es)**

This setting specifies the WAN connections and Internet IP address(es) from which the service can be accessed.

**Server IP Address**

This setting specifies the LAN IP address of the server that handles the requests for the service.

## 16.2 Definition of Servers on LAN

The settings to configure servers on the LAN are located at **Network>Inbound Access>Servers**.

Inbound connections from the Internet will be forwarded to the specified Inbound IP address(es) based on the protocol and port number. When more than one server is defined, requests will be distributed to the servers in the weight ratio specified for each server.



To define a new server, click **Add Server**, which displays the following screen:



Inbound Server	
Server Name	<input type="text" value="myserver"/>
IP Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.123"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Enter a valid server name and its corresponding LAN IP address. Upon clicking **Save** after entering required information, the following screen appears.



To define additional servers, click **Add Server** and repeat the above steps.

## 16.3 Inbound Access Services

### 16.3.1 Definition of Services

Services are defined at **Network>Inbound Access>Services**.

Service	IP Address(es)	Server	Protocol
No Services Defined			
<a href="#">Add Service</a>			

#### Tip

At least one server must be defined before services can be added.

To define a new service, click the **Add Service** button, upon which the following menu appears:

Enable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No																																																								
Service Name	<input type="text" value="web"/>																																																								
IP Protocol	<input type="text" value="TCP"/> <input type="text" value="HTTP"/>																																																								
Port	Single Port <input type="text" value="80"/> Service Port: <input type="text" value="80"/>																																																								
Inbound IP Address(es) <small>(Require at least one IP address)</small>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Connection / IP Address(es)</th> <th>All</th> <th>Clear</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connection / IP Address(es)		All	Clear	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)			<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11				<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12				<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet			
Connection / IP Address(es)		All	Clear																																																						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)																																																								
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12																																																									
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet																																																									
Included Server(s) <small>(Require at least one IP address)</small>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Server</th> <th>Weight</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> myserver (192.168.1.123)</td> <td></td> <td><input type="text" value="2"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Server		Weight	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> myserver (192.168.1.123)		<input type="text" value="2"/>																																																		
Server		Weight																																																							
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> myserver (192.168.1.123)		<input type="text" value="2"/>																																																							

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

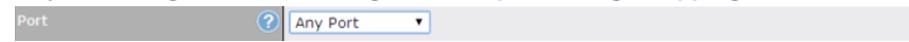
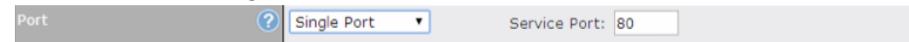
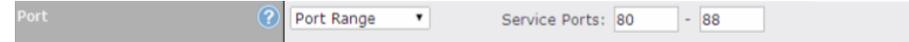
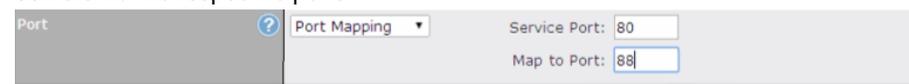
#### Services Settings

#### Enable

This setting specifies whether the inbound service rule takes effect.

When **Yes** is selected, the inbound service rule takes effect. If the inbound traffic matches the specified IP protocol and port, action will be taken by the Peplink Balance based on the other parameters of the rule.

When **No** is selected, the inbound service rule does not take effect. The Peplink Balance will disregard the other parameters of the rule.

<b>Service Name</b>	This setting identifies the service to the system administrator. Only alphanumeric and the underscore “_” characters are valid.
<b>IP Protocol</b>	<p>The <b>IP Protocol</b> setting, along with the <b>Port</b> setting, specifies the protocol of the service as TCP, UDP, ICMP, or IP. Inbound traffic that matches the specified <b>IP Protocol</b> and <b>Port(s)</b> will be forwarded to the LAN hosts specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>Upon choosing a protocol, the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu can be used to automatically the port information of common Internet services (e.g. HTTP, HTTPS, etc.).</p> <p>After selecting an item from the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu, the protocol and the port number will remain manually modifiable.</p>
<b>Port</b>	<p>The <b>Port</b> setting specifies the port(s) that correspond to the service, and can be configured to behave in one of the following manners:</p> <p><b>Any Port, Single Port, Port Range, Port Map, and Range Mapping</b></p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Any Port:</b> all traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol is forwarded to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b> and <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Any Port</b>, then all TCP traffic will be forwarded to the configured servers.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Single Port:</b> traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port is forwarded via the same port to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b>, <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Single Port</b>, and <b>Service Port</b> is set to 80, then TCP traffic received on Port 80 will be forwarded to the configured servers via port 80.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Port Range:</b> traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port range is forwarded via the same respective ports to the LAN hosts specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b>, <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Port Range</b>, and <b>Service Port</b> set to 80-88, then TCP traffic received on ports 80 through 88 will be forwarded to the configured servers via the respective ports.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Port Mapping:</b> traffic that is received by the Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port is forwarded via a different port to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p> <p>For example, if <b>IP Protocol</b> is set to <b>TCP</b>, <b>Port</b> is set to <b>Port Mapping</b>, <b>Service Port</b> is set to 80, and <b>Map to Port</b> is set to 88, then TCP traffic on port 80 is forwarded to the configured servers via port 88.</p> <p>(Please see below for details on the <b>Servers</b> setting.)</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Range Mapping:</b> traffic that is received by Peplink Balance via the specified protocol at the specified port range is forwarded via a different port to the servers specified by the <b>Servers</b> setting.</p>
<b>Inbound IP Address(es)</b>	This setting specifies the WAN connections and Internet IP address(es) from which the service can be accessed.

**Included Server(s)**

This setting specifies the LAN servers that handle requests for the service, and the relative weight values. The amount of traffic that is distributed to a server is proportional to the weight value assigned to the server relative to the total weight.

Example:

With the following weight settings on a Peplink Balance:

- demo\_server\_1: 10
- demo\_server\_2: 5

The total weight is 15 = (10 + 5)

Matching traffic distributed to demo\_server\_1: 67% = (10 / 15) x 100%

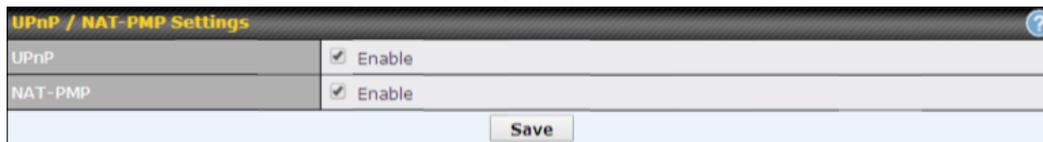
Matching traffic distributed to demo\_server\_2: 33% = (5 / 15) x 100%

### 16.3.2 UPnP / NAT-PMP SETTINGS

UPnP and NAT-PMP are network protocols which allow a computer connected to the LAN port to automatically configure the router to allow parties on the WAN port to connect to itself. That way, the process of inbound port forwarding becomes automated.

When a computer creates a rule using these protocols, the specified TCP/UDP port of all WAN connections' default IP address will be forwarded.

Check the corresponding box(es) to enable UPnP and/or NAT-PMP. Enable these features only if you trust the computers connected to the LAN ports.



UPnP / NAT-PMP Settings	
UPnP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
NAT-PMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
<input type="button" value="Save"/>	

When the options are enabled, a table listing all the forwarded ports under these two protocols can be found at **Status>UPnP / NAT-PMP**.

### 16.3.3 Definition of DNS Records

The built-in DNS server functionality of the Peplink Balance facilitates inbound load balancing. With this functionality, NS/SOA DNS records for a domain name can be delegated to the Internet IP address(es) of the Peplink Balance. Upon receiving a DNS query, the Peplink Balance can return (as an "A" record) the IP address for the domain name on the most appropriate healthy WAN connection. It can also act as a generic DNS server for hosting "A", "CNAME", "MX", "TXT" and "NS" records.

For example:

(This example is for illustration only; the actual resolution that takes place in implementation will likely be different.)

The DNS resolution of the domain name [www.mycompany.com](http://www.mycompany.com) is delegated to the WAN2 Internet IP addresses of the Peplink Balance.

Upon receiving the DNS query, the Peplink Balance returns (as an "A" record) the IP address for [www.mycompany.com](http://www.mycompany.com) on WAN1 because WAN1 is the most appropriate healthy link.

The settings for defining the DNS records to be hosted by the Peplink Balance are located at: **Network>Inbound Access>DNS Settings**.

<b>DNS Server</b>	Disabled	
<b>Zone Transfer</b>	Disabled	
<b>Default SOA / NS</b>	Undefined	
<b>Default Connection Priority</b>	Priority 1: WAN 1, WAN 2, WAN 3, WAN 4, WAN 5, WAN 6, WAN 7, WAN 8, WAN 9, WAN 10, WAN 11, WAN 12, Mobile Internet	
<b>Domain Names</b>	Domain Name <i>There is currently no DNS domains.</i> <input type="button" value="New Domain Name"/>	
<b>Reverse Lookup Zones</b>	Zone Name <i>There is currently no Reverse Lookup Zones.</i> <input type="button" value="New Reverse Lookup Zone"/>	

[Import records via zone transfer...](#)

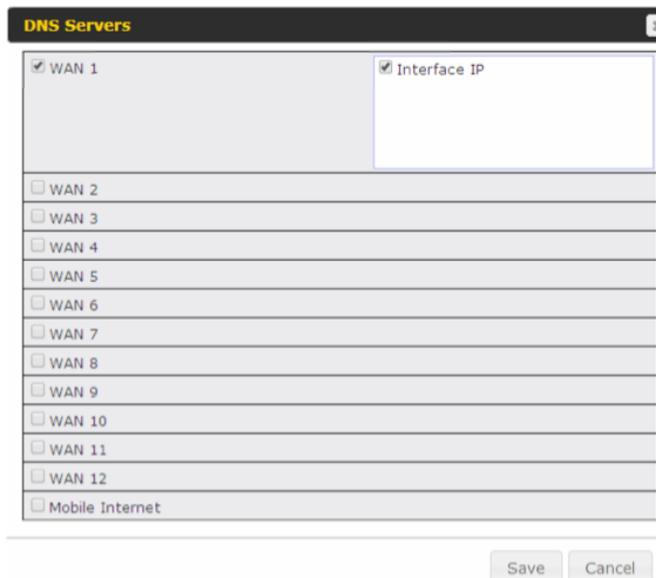
## DNS Settings

This setting specifies the WAN IP addresses on which the DNS server of the Peplink Balance should listen.

If no addresses are selected, the inbound link load balancing feature will be disabled and the Peplink Balance will not respond to DNS requests.

To specify and/or modify the IP addresses on which the DNS server should listen, click the button that corresponds to **DNS Server**, and the following screen is displayed:

### DNS Servers



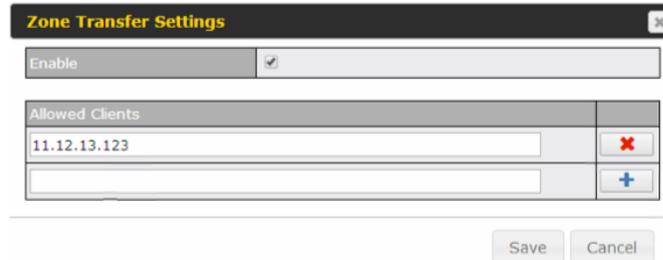
To specify the Internet IP addresses on which the DNS server should listen, select the desired WAN connection then select the desired associated IP addresses. (Multiple items in the list can be selected by holding CTRL and clicking on the items.)

Click **Save** to save the settings when configuration is complete.

### Zone Transfer

This setting specifies the IP address(es) of the secondary DNS server(s) authorized to retrieve zone records from the DNS server of the Peplink Balance.

The zone transfer server of the Peplink Balance listens on TCP port 53.



The dialog box titled "Zone Transfer Settings" contains an "Enable" checkbox which is checked. Below it is a table with the header "Allowed Clients". The table has two columns: a text input field and a button. The first row has "11.12.13.123" in the input field and a red "X" button. The second row has an empty input field and a blue "+" button. At the bottom of the dialog are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.

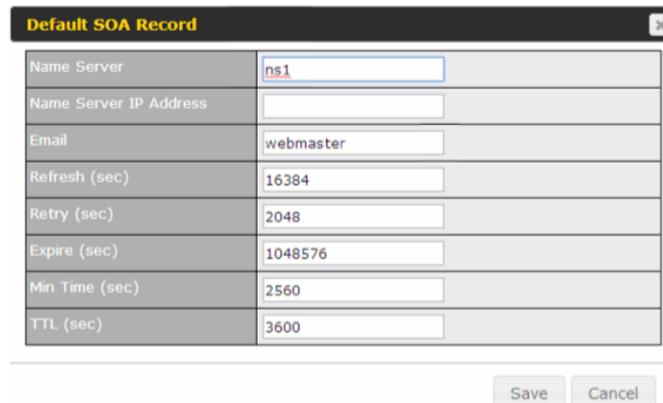
The Peplink Balance serves both the clients that are accessing from the specified IP addresses, and the clients that are accessing its LAN interface.

### Routing Control by Subnet Database

When this function is enabled, the system will check to see if an incoming DNS client is within any WAN's ISP subnet. Only the matched WAN(s)'s IP addresses will be returned. Note that this feature is available only when a subnet database has been defined.

### Default SOA / NS

Click the  button to define a default SOA / NS record for all domain names. For configuration details please refer to **Section 1.1.1**.



The dialog box titled "Default SOA Record" contains a table with the following fields and values:

Name Server	ns1
Name Server IP Address	
Email	webmaster
Refresh (sec)	16384
Retry (sec)	2048
Expire (sec)	1048576
Min Time (sec)	2560
TTL (sec)	3600

At the bottom of the dialog are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.

When defining a default SOA record, **Name Server IP Address** is optional. If left blank, the Address (A) record for the same server should be defined manually in each domain.

For defining default NS records, the host *[domain]* indicates that this record is for the domain name itself without a sub-domain prefix. To add a secondary NS server, just create a second NS record with the **Host** field left empty. When the entered name server is a fully qualified domain name (FQDN), the **IP Address** field will be disabled.

### Default Connection Priority

**Default Connection Priority** defines the default priority group of each WAN connection in resolving A records. It applies to Address (A) records which have the **Connection Priority** set to **Default**. Please refer to **Section 16.3.9** for details.

The WAN connection(s) with the highest priority (smallest number) will be chosen. Those with lower priorities will not be chosen in resolving A records unless the higher priority ones become unavailable.

To specify the primary and backup connections, click the  button that corresponds to **Default Connection Priority**. The following screen will appear:

**Default Connection Priority** ✕

Connection	Priority
WAN 1	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 2	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 3	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 4	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 5	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 6	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 7	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 8	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 9	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 10	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 11	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 12	1 (Highest) ▼
Mobile Internet	1 (Highest) ▼

Each WAN connection is associated with a priority number. Click **Save** to save the settings when configuration is complete.

**Domain name**

This section shows a list of domain names to be hosted by the Peplink Balance. Each domain can have its “NS”, “MX” and “TXT” records, and its sub-domains’ “A” and “CNAME” records. Add a new record by clicking the **New Domain Name** button. Click on a domain name to edit. Press  to remove a domain name.

### 16.3.4 Creating DNS Records

To create new DNS records for a domain, perform the following steps:

From **Network>Inbound Access>DNS Settings**, click **New Domain Name** in the **Domain Name** field. Then click on the newly created domain name and the following screen will be displayed:

peplink.com
✕

SOA Record
?

Use Default SOA and NS Records
✎

NS Records
?

Host	Name Server	TTL (sec)	
	?	?	(SOA)

MX Records
?

Host	Priority	Mail Server	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no MX records.</i>				

CNAME Records
?

Host	Points To	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no CNAME records.</i>			

A Records
?

Host	Included IP Address(es)	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no A records.</i>			

TXT Records
?

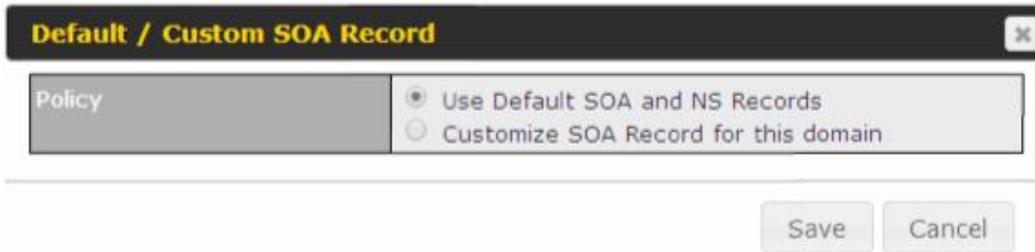
Host	TXT Value	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no default TXT records.</i>			

SRV Records
?

Service	Priority	Weight	Target	Port	TTL (sec)	
<i>There is currently no SRV records</i>						

This page is for defining the domain's SOA, NS, MX, CNAME, A, TXT, and SRV records. Seven tables are presented in this page for defining the five types of records.

### 16.3.5 SOARecords



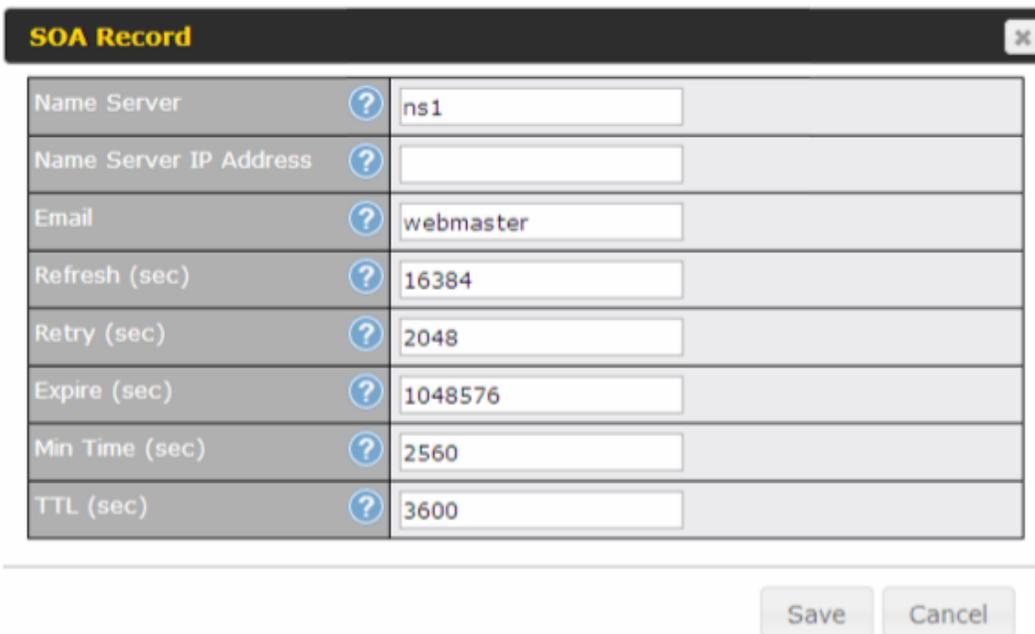
**Default / Custom SOA Record** [X]

Policy

Use Default SOA and NS Records  
 Customize SOA Record for this domain

Save Cancel

Click on the  icon to choose whether to use the pre-defined default SOA record and NS records. If the option **Use Default SOA and NS Records** is selected, any changes made in the default SOA/NS records will be applied to this domain automatically. Otherwise, select the option **Customize SOA Record** for this domain to customize this domain's SOA and NS records.



**SOA Record** [X]

Name Server	?	ns1
Name Server IP Address	?	
Email	?	webmaster
Refresh (sec)	?	16384
Retry (sec)	?	2048
Expire (sec)	?	1048576
Min Time (sec)	?	2560
TTL (sec)	?	3600

Save Cancel

This table displays the current SOA record. When the option **Customize SOA Record for this domain** is selected, you can click the link **Click here to define SOA record** to create or click on the **Name Server** field to edit the SOA record.

In the SOA record, you have to fill out the fields **Name Server**, **Name Server IP Address**, **Email**, **Refresh**, **Retry**, **Expire**, **Min Time**, and **TTL**.

Default values are set for SOA and NS records,

- **Name Server IP Address:** This is the IP address of the authoritative name server. An entry in this field is optional. If the Balance is the authoritative name server of the domain, this field's value should be the WAN connection's name server IP address that is registered in the DNS registrar. If this field is entered, a corresponding A record for the name server will be created automatically. If it is left blank, the A record for the name server must be created manually.
- **E-mail:** Defines the e-mail address of the person responsible for this zone. Note:

format should be *mailbox-name.domain.com*, e.g., *hostmaster.example.com*.

- **Refresh:** Indicates the length of time (in seconds) when the slave will try to refresh the zone from the master.
- **Retry:** Defines the duration (in seconds) between retries if the slave (secondary) fails to contact the master and the refresh (above) has expired.
- **Expire:** Indicates the time (in seconds) when the zone data is no longer authoritative. This option applies to slave DNS servers only.
- **Min Time:** Is the negative caching time which defines the time (in seconds) after an error record is cached.
- **TTL (Time-to-Live):** Defines the duration (in seconds) that the record may be cached.

### 16.3.6 NS Records

The **NS Record** table shows the NS servers and TTL that correspond to the domain. The NS record of the name server defined in the SOA record is automatically added here.

To add a new NS record, click the **New NS Records** button in the **NS Records** box. Then the table will expand to look like the following:



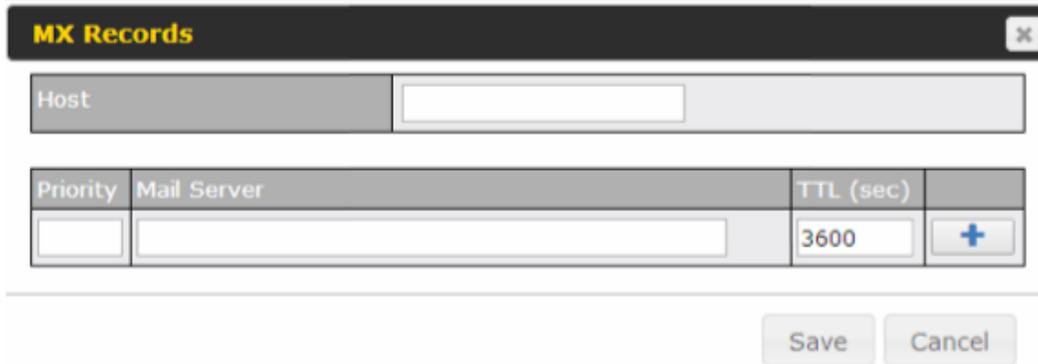
The screenshot shows a window titled "NS Records" with a close button (X). Below the title bar is a "Host" input field. Underneath is a table with two columns: "Name Server" and "TTL (sec)". The "Name Server" column has an empty input field. The "TTL (sec)" column has a value of "3600" and a blue "+" button to its right. At the bottom of the window are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.

When creating an NS record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank.

Enter a name server host name and its IP address into the corresponding boxes. The host name can be a non-FQDN (fully qualified domain name). Please be sure that a corresponding A record is created. Click the **+** button on the right to finish and to add other name servers. Click the **Save** button to save your changes.

### 16.3.7 MX Records

The **MX Record** table shows the domain's MX records. To add a new MX record, click the **New MX Records** button in the **MX Records** box. Then the table will expand to look like the following:



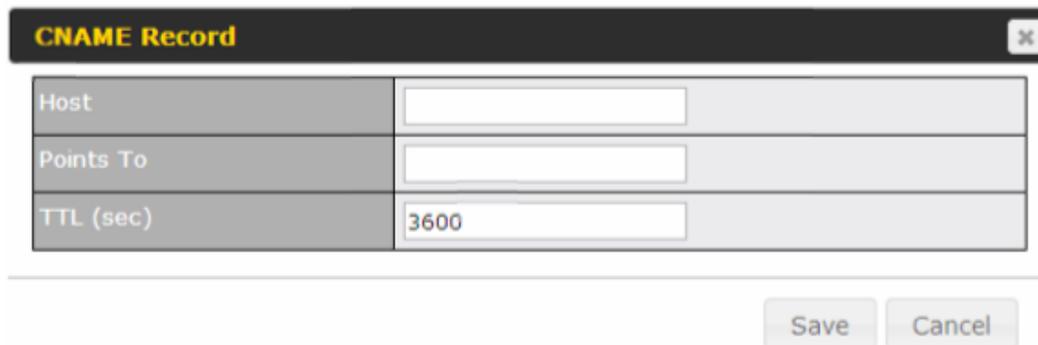
The screenshot shows a form titled "MX Records" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The form contains a "Host" field, a "Priority" field, a "Mail Server" field, and a "TTL (sec)" field with a value of "3600". A blue "+" button is located to the right of the TTL field. Below the form are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.

When creating an MX record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank.

For each record, **Priority** and **Mail Server** name must be entered. **Priority** typically ranges from 10 to 100. Smaller numbers have a higher priority. After finishing adding MX records, click the **Save** button.

### 16.3.8 CNAME Record

The **CNAME Record** table shows the domain's CNAME records. To add a new CNAME record, click the **New CNAME Records** button in the **CNAME Record** box. Then the table will expand to look like the following:



The screenshot shows a form titled "CNAME Record" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The form contains a "Host" field, a "Points To" field, and a "TTL (sec)" field with a value of "3600". Below the form are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.

When creating a CNAME record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank.

The wildcard character "\*" is supported in the **Host** field. The reference of ".domain.name" will be returned for every name ending with ".domain.name" except names that have their own records.

The **TTL** field tells the time to live of the record in external DNS caches.

### 16.3.9 A Record

This table shows the A records of the domain name. To add an A record, click the **New A Record** button. The following screen will appear:

**A Record**
✕

Host	<input type="text" value="www"/>
TTL (sec)	<input type="text" value="3600"/>
Priority	<input type="radio"/> Default <input checked="" type="radio"/> Custom

Included IP Address(es)
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet
<input type="checkbox"/> Custom IP Address

Connection	Priority
WAN 1	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 2	1 (Highest) ▼
WAN 3	1 (Highest) ▼

A record may be automatically added for the SOA records with a name server IP address provided.

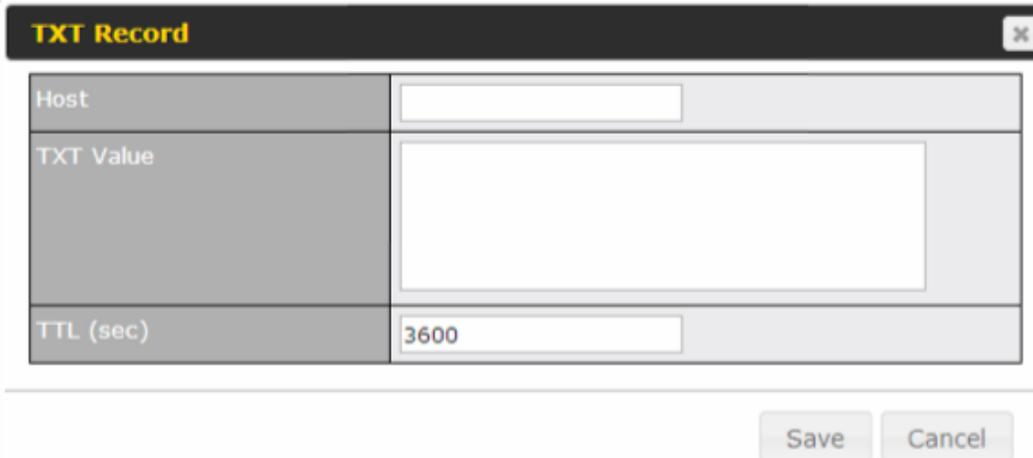
A Record	
<b>Host Name</b>	This field specifies the A record of this sub-domain to be served by the Peplink Balance. The wildcard character "*" is supported. The IP addresses of "*.domain.name" will be returned for every name ending with ".domain.name" except names that have their own records.
<b>TTL</b>	This setting specifies the time to live of this record in external DNS caches. In order to reflect any dynamic changes on the IP addresses in case of link failure and recovery, this value should be set to a smaller value, e.g., 5 secs, 60 secs, etc.
<b>Priority</b>	This option specifies the priority of different connections. Select the <b>Default</b> option to apply the <b>Default Connection Priority</b> (refer to the table shown on the main DNS settings page) to an A record. To customize priorities, choose the <b>Custom</b> option and a priority selection table will be shown at the bottom.
<b>Included IP Address(es)</b>	<p>This setting specifies lists of WAN-specific Internet IP addresses that are candidates to be returned when the Peplink Balance responds to DNS queries for the domain name specified by <b>Host Name</b>.</p> <p>The IP addresses listed in each box as <b>default</b> are the Internet IP addresses associated with each of the WAN connections. Static IP addresses that are not associated with any WAN can be entered into the <b>Custom IP</b> list. A PTR record is also created for each custom IP.</p> <p>For WAN connections that operate under drop-in mode, there may be other routable IP addresses in addition to the default IP address. Therefore, the Peplink Balance allows custom Internet IP addresses to be added manually via filling the text box on the right-hand side and clicking the  button.</p> <p>Only the checked IP addresses in the lists are candidates to be returned when responding to a DNS query.</p> <p>If a WAN connection is down, the corresponding set of IP addresses will not be returned. However, the IP addresses in the <b>Custom IP Address</b> field will always be returned.</p> <p>If the <b>Connection Priority</b> field is set to <b>Custom</b>, you can also specify the usage priority of each WAN connection. Only selected IP address(es) of available connection(s) with the highest priority, and custom IP addresses will be returned. By default, <b>Connection Priority</b> is set to <b>Default</b>.</p>

### 16.3.10 PTR Records

PTR records are created along with A records pointing to custom IPs. Please refer to **Section 16.3.9** for details. For example, if you created an A record *www.mydomain.com* pointing to *11.22.33.44*, then a PTR record *44.33.22.11.in-addr.arpa* pointing to *www.mydomain.com* will also be created. When there are multiple host names pointing to the same IP address, only one PTR record for the IP address will be created. In order for PTR records to function, you also need to create NS records. For example, if the IP address range *11.22.33.0* to *11.22.33.255* is delegated to the DNS server on the Peplink Balance, you will also have to create a domain *33.22.11.in-addr.arpa* and have its NS records pointing to your DNS server's (the Peplink Balance's) public IP addresses. With the above records created, the PTR record creation is complete.

### 16.3.11 TXT Records

This table shows the TXT record of the domain name.



TXT Record	
Host	<input type="text"/>
TXT Value	<input type="text"/>
TTL (sec)	<input type="text" value="3600"/>

Save Cancel

To add a new TXT record, click the **New TXT Record** button in the **TXT Records** box. Click the **Edit** button to edit the record. The time-to-live value and the TXT record's value can be entered. Click the **Save** button to finish.

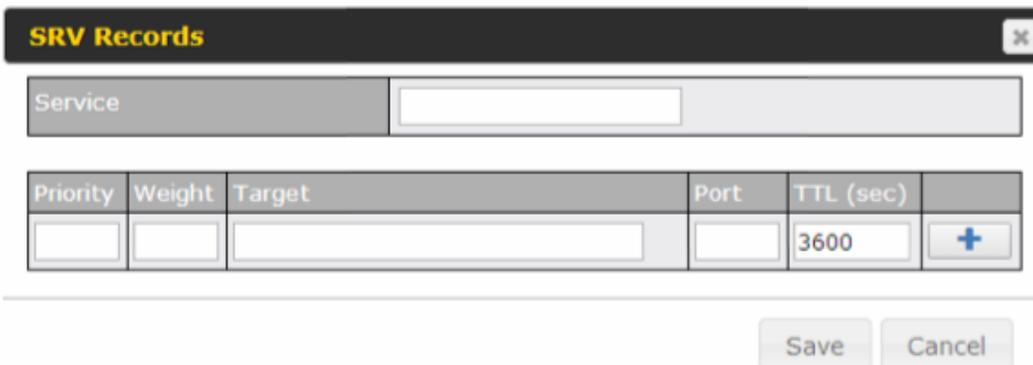
When creating a TXT record for the domain itself (not a sub-domain), the **Host** field should be left blank.

The maximum size of the TXT Value is 255 bytes.

After editing the five types of records, you can leave the page by simply going to another section of the web admin interface.

### 16.3.12 SRV Records

To add a new SRV record, click the **New SRV Record** button in the **SRV Records** box.



SRV Records					
Service		<input type="text"/>			
Priority	Weight	Target	Port	TTL (sec)	
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="3600"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>

Save Cancel

- **Service:** The symbolic name of the desired service.
- **Priority:** Indicates the priority of the target; the smaller the value, the higher the priority.
- **Weight:** A relative weight for records with the same priority.
- **Target:** The canonical hostname of the machine providing the service.
- **Port:** Enter the TCP or UDP port number on which the service is to be found.

### Domain Delegation

These are the steps to follow when you host your domain at an ISP or domain registrar and want to delegate a sub-domain to be resolved and managed by the Peplink Balance.

- Click the **New Domain Name** button to add a domain name (e.g., *www.mycompany.com*). Click the corresponding domain name to view and edit record details.



Domain Name
peplink.com

New Domain Name

- Create SOA/NS records named *ns1*, *ns2*, etc. The IP addresses are the Balance's DNS server addresses.



Name Server	Details	IP Address	TTL (sec)
ns1	Email: webmaster Refresh (sec): 16384 Retry (sec): 2048 Expire (sec): 1048576 Min Time (sec): 2560	220.246.168.80	3600



Host	Name Server	TTL (sec)
peplink.com	ns1	3600 (SOA)

New NS Records

- Then create an A record with an empty host name.

**A Record** ✕

Host	<input type="text"/>
TTL (sec)	3600
Priority	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom

Included IP Address(es)

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Interface IP
	<input type="text"/> <span style="float: right;">+</span>

<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet
<input type="checkbox"/> Custom IP Address

A Records <span style="float: right;">?</span>			
Host	Included IP Address(es)	TTL (sec)	
ns1	220.246.168.80	3600	(SOA)

If ISC BIND 8 or 9 is being utilized in the zone file mycompany.com, add the following lines:

```

www           IN      NS      balancewan1
www           IN      NS      balancewan2
balancewan1  IN      A       202.153.122.108
balancewan2  IN      A       67.38.212.18
    
```

202.153.122.108 and 67.38.212.18 represent the WAN1 and WAN2 Internet IP addresses of the Peplink Balance, respectively. The values of the IP addresses are fictitious and for illustration only.

### Hosting the complete domain at Peplink Balance

To host your own DNS server, contact the DNS registrar to have the NS records of the domain (e.g., mycompany.com) point to your Balance's WAN IP addresses. Then follow these instructions:

1. Under **Network>Inbound Access>DNS Settings**, create a new domain(e.g., mycompany.com).
2. Create NS records named ns1, ns2, etc. The IP addresses are the Balance's DNS server addresses (same as above).

3. Create the corresponding A, CNAME, MX, and TXT records as you wish. The A record resembles the one below:

A Records			
Host	Included IP Address(es)	TTL (sec)	
www	WAN1:default WAN2:default	3600	
<input type="button" value="New A Record"/>			

### Testing the DNS Configuration

The following steps can be used to test the DNS configuration:

From a host on the Internet, use an IP address of the Peplink Balance and nslookup to lookup the corresponding hostname. Check the information that is returned for the expected results.

An nslookup in Windows will appear as follows:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\User Name>nslookup
Default Server: ns1.myisp.com
Address: 147.22.11.2
>server 202.153.122.108 (This is PeplinkBalance's WAN IP address.)
Default Server: balance.mycompany.com
Address: 202.153.122.108
>www.mycompany.com (This is the hostname to be looked up.)
Default Server: balance.mycompany.com
Address: 202.153.122.108
Name: www.mycompany.com
Address: 202.153.122.109, 67.38.212.19
```

Please note that the values of the IP addresses are fictitious and for illustration only.

## 16.4 Reverse Lookup Zones

Reverse lookup zones can be configured in **Network>Inbound Access>DNS Settings**.

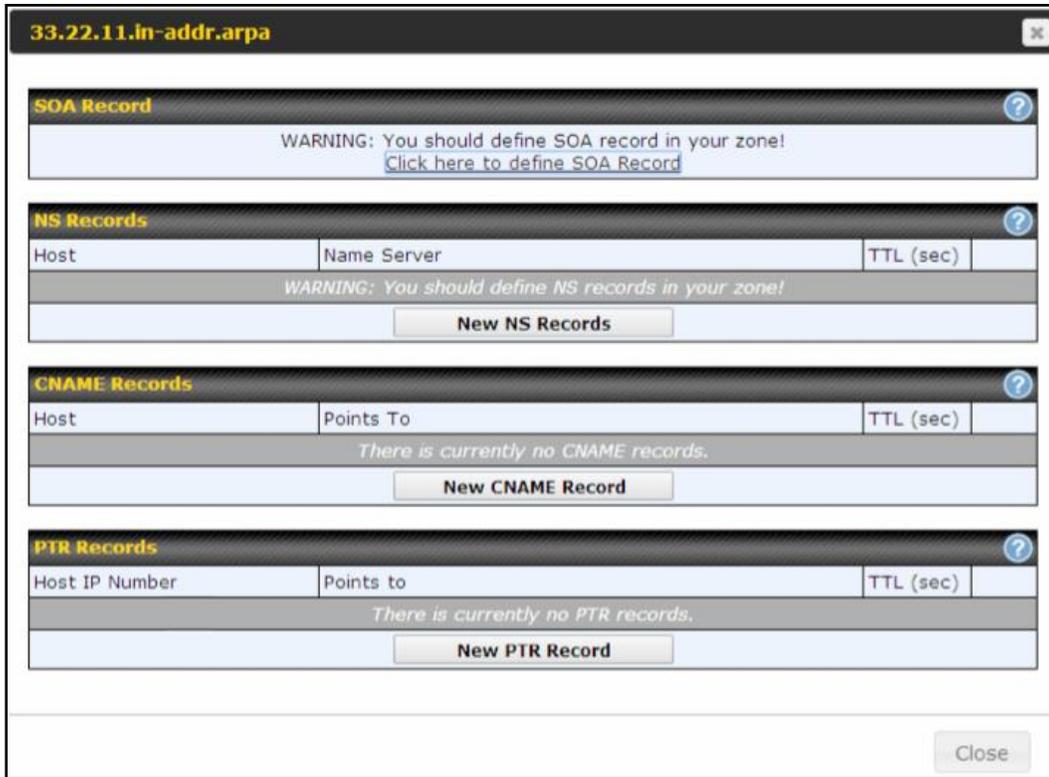


Reverse lookup refers to performing a DNS query to find one or more DNS names associated with a given IP address.

The DNS stores IP addresses in the form of specially formatted names as pointer (PTR) records using special domains/zones. The zone is *in-addr.arpa*.

To enable DNS clients to perform a reverse lookup for a host, perform two steps:

- Create a reverse lookup zone that corresponds to the subnet network address of the host.  
In the reverse lookup zone, add a pointer (PTR) resource record that maps the host IP address to the host name.
- Click the **New Reverse Lookup Zone** button and enter a reverse lookup zone name. If you are delegated the subnet *11.22.33.0/24*, the **Zone Name** should be *33.22.11.in-addr.arpa*. PTR records for *11.22.33.1*, *11.22.33.2*, ... *11.22.33.254* should be defined in this zone where the host IP numbers are *1*, *2*, ... *254*, respectively.



**33.22.11.in-addr.arpa**

**SOA Record**

WARNING: You should define SOA record in your zone!  
[Click here to define SOA Record](#)

**NS Records**

Host	Name Server	TTL (sec)
WARNING: You should define NS records in your zone!		

**New NS Records**

**CNAME Records**

Host	Points To	TTL (sec)
There is currently no CNAME records.		

**New CNAME Record**

**PTR Records**

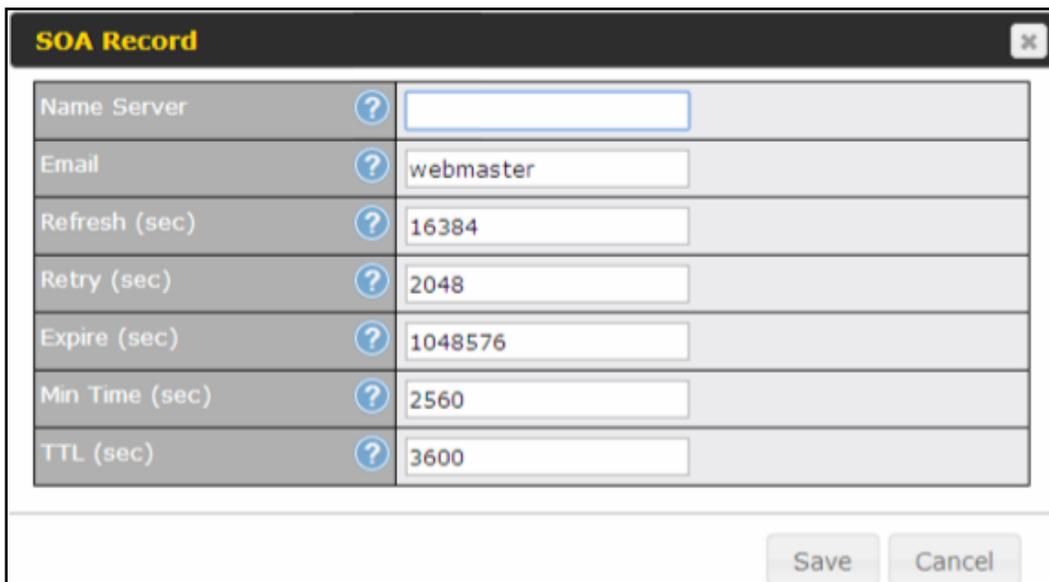
Host IP Number	Points to	TTL (sec)
There is currently no PTR records.		

**New PTR Record**

Close

### 16.4.1 SOA Record

You can click the link **Click here to define SOA record** to create or click on the **Name Server** field to edit the SOA record.



**SOA Record**

Name Server	?	<input type="text"/>
Email	?	<input type="text" value="webmaster"/>
Refresh (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="16384"/>
Retry (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="2048"/>
Expire (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="1048576"/>
Min Time (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="2560"/>
TTL (sec)	?	<input type="text" value="3600"/>

Save Cancel

**Name Server:** Enter the NS record's FQDN server name here.

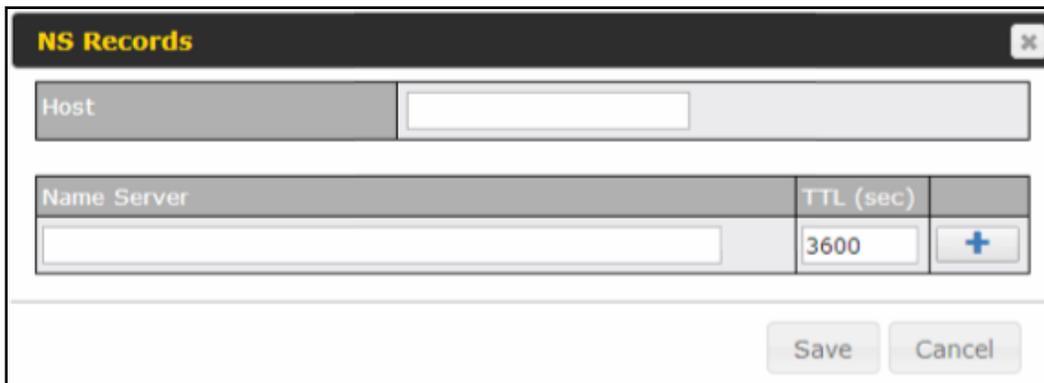
For example:

"ns1.mydomain.com" (equivalent to "www.1stdomain.com.")

"ns2.mydomain.com."

**Email, Refresh, Retry, Expire, Min Time, and TTL** are entered in the same way as in the forward zone. Please refer to **Section 1.1.1** for details.

### 16.4.2 NS Records

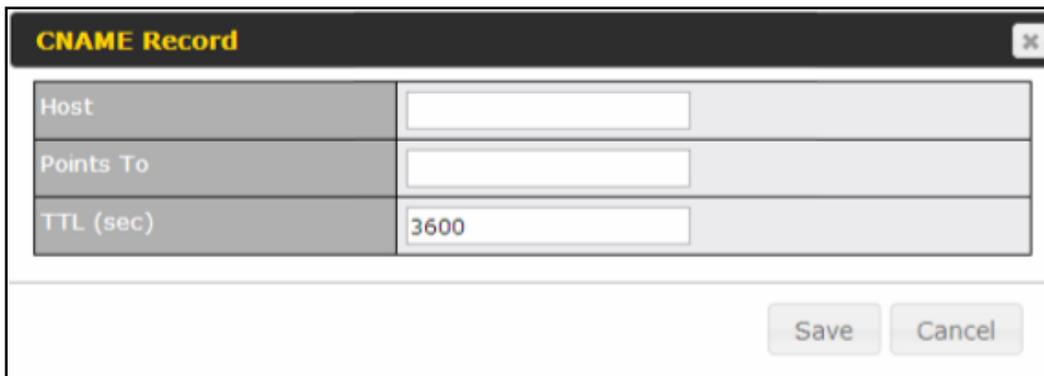


NS Records	
Host	<input type="text"/>
Name Server	<input type="text"/>
TTL (sec)	3600 <input type="button" value="+"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

The NS record of the name server defined in the SOA record is automatically added here. To create a new NS record, click the **New NS Records** button.

When creating an NS record for the *reverse lookup zone* itself (not a sub-domain or dedicated zone), the **Host** field should be left blank. **Name Server** must be a FQDN.

### 16.4.3 CNAME Records

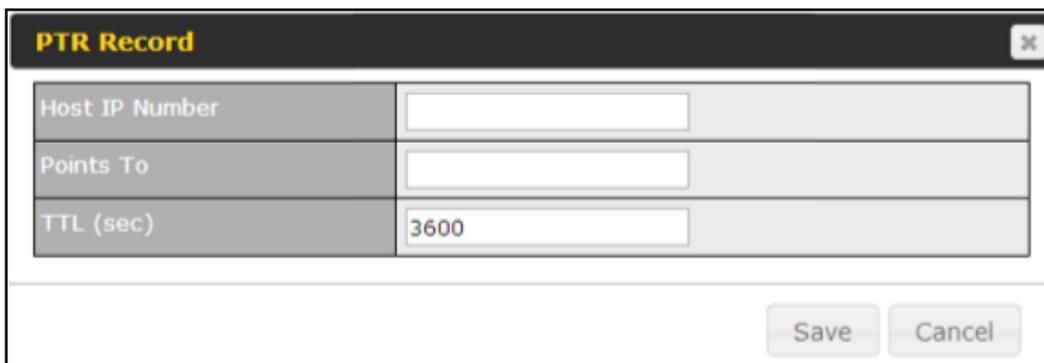


CNAME Record	
Host	<input type="text"/>
Points To	<input type="text"/>
TTL (sec)	3600
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

To create a new CNAME record, click the **New CNAME Record** button.

CNAME records are typically used for defining classless reverse lookup zones. Subnetted reverse lookup zones are further described in [RFC 2317](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc2317), "Classless IN-ADDR.ARPA delegation."

#### 16.4.4 PTR Records



PTR Record	
Host IP Number	<input type="text"/>
Points To	<input type="text"/>
TTL (sec)	<input type="text" value="3600"/>

Save Cancel

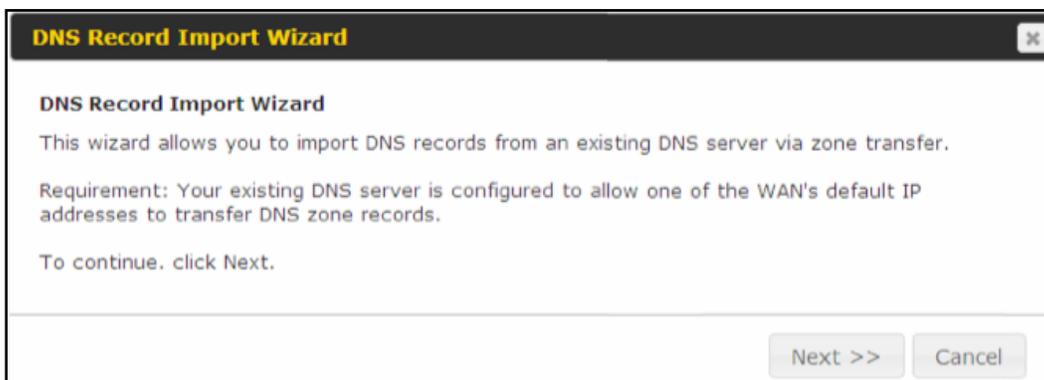
To create a new PTR record, click the **New PTR Record** button.

For **Host IP Number** field, enter the last integer in the IP address of a PTR record. For example, for the IP address *11.22.33.44*, where the reverse lookup zone is *33.22.11.in-addr.arpa.addr*, the **Host IP Number** should be *44*.

The **Points To** field defines the host name which the PTR record should be pointed to. It must be a FQDN.

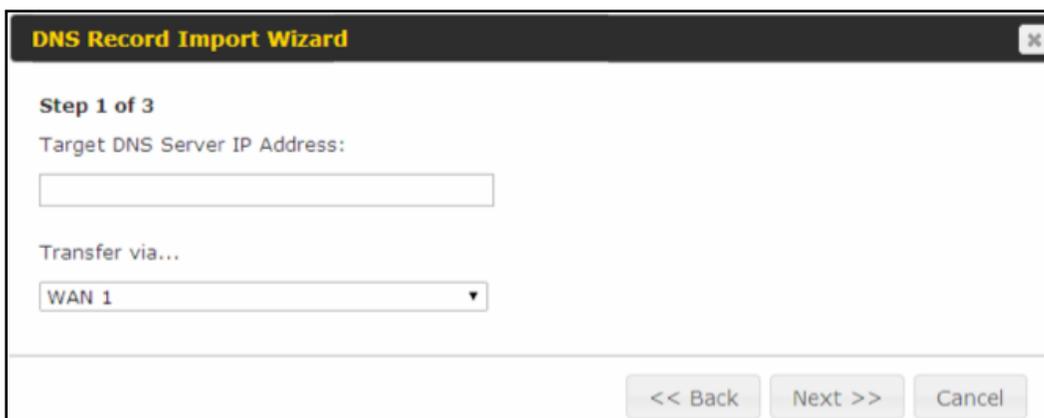
## 16.5 DNS Record Import Wizard

At the bottom of the DNS settings page, the link **Import records via zone transfer...** is used to import DNS record using an import wizard.



The screenshot shows a window titled "DNS Record Import Wizard" with a close button in the top right corner. The main text reads: "DNS Record Import Wizard. This wizard allows you to import DNS records from an existing DNS server via zone transfer. Requirement: Your existing DNS server is configured to allow one of the WAN's default IP addresses to transfer DNS zone records. To continue, click Next." At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Next >>" and "Cancel".

- Select **Next>>** to continue.



The screenshot shows a window titled "DNS Record Import Wizard" with a close button in the top right corner. The main text reads: "Step 1 of 3. Target DNS Server IP Address: [text input field]. Transfer via... [dropdown menu showing WAN 1]. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "<< Back", "Next >>", and "Cancel".

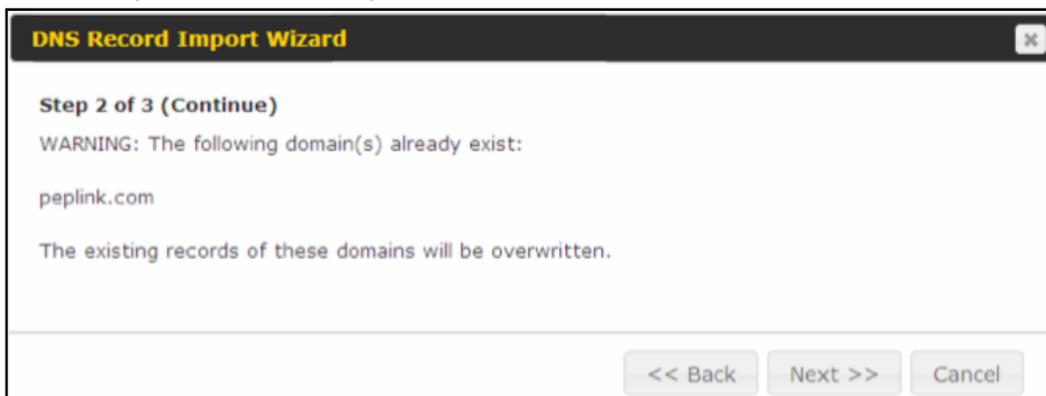
- In the **Target DNS Server IP Address** field, enter the IP address of the DNS server.
- In the **Transfer via...** field, choose the connection which you would like to transfer through.
- Select **Next>>** to continue.

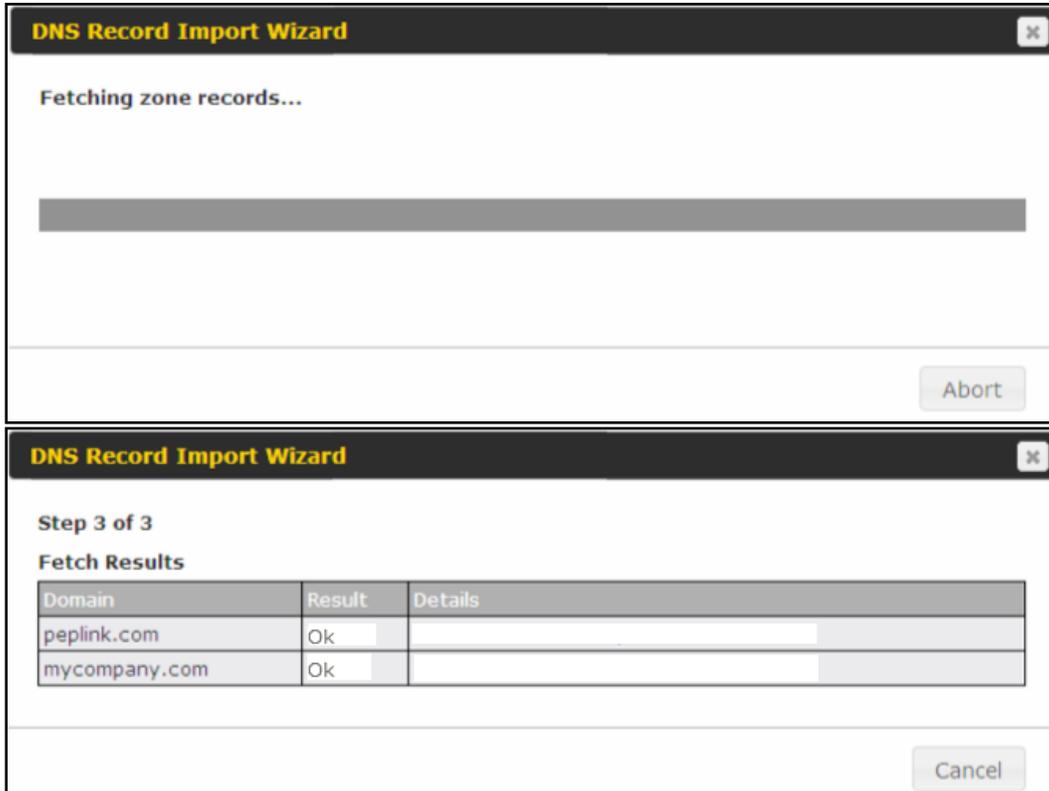


- In the blank space, enter the **Domain Names (Zones)** which you would like to assign the IP address entered in the previous step. Enter one domain name per line.
- Select **Next>>** to continue.

#### Important Note

If you have entered domain(s) which already exist in your settings, a warning message will appear. Select **Next>>** to overwrite the existing record or **<<Back** to go back to the previous step.





After the zone records process have been fetched, the fetch results would be shown as above. You can view import details by clicking the corresponding hyperlink on the right-hand side.

Zone: mytest.com		
Record Type	Name	Value
SOA	mytest.com	ns1.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns1.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns2.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns3.mytest.com.
NS	mytest.com	ns4.mytest.com.
MX	mytest.com	mail01.mytest.com.
MX	mytest.com	1.us.testinglabs.com.
MX	mytest.com	backup.mytest.com.
MX	mytest.com	2.us.testinglabs.com.
A	backup.mytest.com	210.120.111.12
A	download.mytest.com	33.11.22.33
A	guest.mytest.com	126.132.111.0

## 17 NAT Mappings

The Peplink Balance allows the IP address mapping of all inbound and outbound NAT'ed traffic to and from an internal client IP address.

NAT mappings can be configured at **Network > NAT Mappings**.

LAN Clients	Inbound Mappings	Outbound Mappings	
192.168.1.123	(WAN 1):10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)	Use Interface IP only	
<a href="#">Add NAT Rule</a>			

To add a rule for NAT mappings, click **Add NAT Rule** and the following screen will be displayed:

LAN Client(s)	 IP Address ▾																												
Address	 192.168.1.123																												
Inbound Mappings	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12		<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet	
Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)																													
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)																												
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11																													
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12																													
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet																													
Outbound Mappings	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Connection / Outbound IP Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>WAN 1</td> <td>10.90.0.65 (Interface IP) ▾</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN 2</td> <td>10.90.0.77 (Interface IP) ▾</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAN 3</td> <td>Interface IP ▾</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connection / Outbound IP Address		WAN 1	10.90.0.65 (Interface IP) ▾	WAN 2	10.90.0.77 (Interface IP) ▾	WAN 3	Interface IP ▾																				
Connection / Outbound IP Address																													
WAN 1	10.90.0.65 (Interface IP) ▾																												
WAN 2	10.90.0.77 (Interface IP) ▾																												
WAN 3	Interface IP ▾																												

NAT Mapping Settings	
<b>LAN Client(s)</b>	NAT Mapping rules can be defined for a single LAN <b>IP Address</b> , an <b>IP Range</b> , or an <b>IP Network</b> .
<b>Address</b>	This refers to the LAN host's private IP address. The system maps this address to a number of public IP addresses (specified below) in order to facilitate inbound and outbound traffic. This option is only available when <b>IP Address</b> is selected.
<b>Range</b>	The IP range is a contiguous group of private IP addresses used by the LAN host. The system maps these addresses to a number of public IP addresses (specified below) to facilitate outbound traffic. This option is only available when <b>IP Range</b> is selected.

<b>Network</b>	The IP network refers to all private IP addresses and ranges managed by the LAN host. The system maps these addresses to a number of public IP addresses (specified below) to facilitate outbound traffic. This option is only available when <b>IP Network</b> is selected.
<b>Inbound Mappings</b>	<p>This setting specifies the WAN connections and corresponding WAN-specific Internet IP addresses on which the system should bind. Any access to the specified WAN connection(s) and IP address(es) will be forwarded to the LAN host. This option is only available when <b>IP Address</b> is selected in the <b>LAN Client(s)</b> field.</p> <p>Note 1: Inbound mapping is not needed for WAN connections in drop-in mode or IP forwarding mode.</p> <p>Note 2: Each WAN IP address can be associated to one NAT mapping only.</p>
<b>Outbound Mappings</b>	<p>This setting specifies the WAN IP addresses should be used when an IP connection is made from a LAN host to the Internet.</p> <p>Each LAN host in an IP range or IP network will be evenly mapped to one of each selected WAN's IP addresses (for better IP address utilization) in a persistent manner (for better application compatibility).</p> <p>Note 1: If you do not want to use a specific WAN for outgoing accesses, you should still choose default here, then customize the outbound access rule in the <b>Outbound Policy</b> section.</p> <p>Note 2: WAN connections in drop-in mode or IP forwarding mode are not shown here.</p>

Click **Save** to save the settings when configuration has been completed.

**Important Note**

Inbound firewall rules override inbound mapping settings.

## 18 Captive Portal

The captive portal serves as gateway that clients have to pass if they wish to access the internet using your router. To configure, navigate to **Network>Captive Portal**.

Captive Portal Settings	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LAN
Hostname	<input type="text" value="captive-portal.peplink.com"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Access Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Open Access <input type="radio"/> User Authentication
Access Quota	<input type="text" value="30"/> mins (0: Unlimited) <input type="text" value="0"/> MB (0: Unlimited)
Quota Reset Time	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Daily at <input type="text" value="00"/> :00 <input type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="1440"/> minutes after quota reached
Allowed Networks	<input type="text" value="Domain Name / IP"/> <input type="button" value="+"/>
Splash Page	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Built-in <input type="radio"/> External, URL: <input type="text" value="http://"/>

Captive Portal Settings																	
<b>Enable</b>	Check <b>Enable</b> and then, optionally, select the LANs/VLANs that will use the captive portal.																
<b>Hostname</b>	To customize the portal's form submission and redirection URL, enter a new URL in this field. To reset the URL to factory settings, click <b>Default</b> .																
<b>Access Mode</b>	Click <b>Open Access</b> to allow clients to freely access your router. Click <b>User Authentication</b> to force your clients to authenticate before accessing your router.																
<b>RADIUS Server</b>	<p>This authenticates your clients through a RADIUS server. After selecting this option, you will see the following fields:</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Authentication</td> <td>RADIUS Server ▾</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Auth Server</td> <td><input type="text"/> Port 1812 <input type="button" value="Default"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Auth Server Secret</td> <td><input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CoA-DM</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Server</td> <td><input type="text"/> Port 1813 <input type="button" value="Default"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Server Secret</td> <td><input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Interim Interval</td> <td><input type="text"/> seconds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Connection</td> <td>LAN ▾</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Fill in the necessary information to complete your connection to the server and enable authentication.</p>	Authentication	RADIUS Server ▾	Auth Server	<input type="text"/> Port 1812 <input type="button" value="Default"/>	Auth Server Secret	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	CoA-DM	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accounting Server	<input type="text"/> Port 1813 <input type="button" value="Default"/>	Accounting Server Secret	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters	Accounting Interim Interval	<input type="text"/> seconds	Network Connection	LAN ▾
Authentication	RADIUS Server ▾																
Auth Server	<input type="text"/> Port 1812 <input type="button" value="Default"/>																
Auth Server Secret	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters																
CoA-DM	<input type="checkbox"/>																
Accounting Server	<input type="text"/> Port 1813 <input type="button" value="Default"/>																
Accounting Server Secret	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters																
Accounting Interim Interval	<input type="text"/> seconds																
Network Connection	LAN ▾																

<b>LDAP Server</b>	<p>This authenticates your clients through a LDAP server. Upon selecting this option, you will see the following fields:</p> <table border="1"><tr><td>Authentication</td><td>LDAP Server</td></tr><tr><td>LDAP Server</td><td><input type="text"/> Port 389 <input type="button" value="Default"/></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Use DN/Password to bind to LDAP Server</td></tr><tr><td>Base DN</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr><tr><td>Base Filter</td><td><input type="text"/></td></tr></table> <p>Fill in the necessary information to complete your connection to the server and enable authentication.</p>	Authentication	LDAP Server	LDAP Server	<input type="text"/> Port 389 <input type="button" value="Default"/>		<input type="checkbox"/> Use DN/Password to bind to LDAP Server	Base DN	<input type="text"/>	Base Filter	<input type="text"/>
Authentication	LDAP Server										
LDAP Server	<input type="text"/> Port 389 <input type="button" value="Default"/>										
	<input type="checkbox"/> Use DN/Password to bind to LDAP Server										
Base DN	<input type="text"/>										
Base Filter	<input type="text"/>										
<b>Access Quota</b>	Set a time and data cap to each user's Internet usage.										
<b>Quota Reset Time</b>	This menu determines how your usage quota resets. Setting it to <b>Daily</b> will reset it at a specified time every day. Setting a number of <b>minutes after quota reached</b> establish a timer for each user that begins after the quota has been reached.										
<b>Allowed Networks</b>	To whitelist a network, enter the domain name / IP address here and click <input type="button" value="+"/> . To delete an existing network from the list of allowed networks, click the <input type="button" value="x"/> button next to the listing.										
<b>Splash Page</b>	Here, you can choose between using the Balance's built-in captive portal and redirecting clients to a URL you define.										

The **Portal Customization** menu has two options: **Preview** and . Clicking **Preview** will result in a pop-up previewing the captive portal that your clients will see. Clicking  will result in the appearance of following menu:

Portal Customization	
Logo Image	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No image [Use default Logo Image] <input type="radio"/> Use default Logo Image <input type="radio"/> <input type="button" value="Choose File"/> No file chosen <small>NOTE: Size max 512KB. Supported images types: JPEG, PNG and GIF.</small>
Message	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 100px;"></div>
Terms & Conditions	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 100px;">[Use default Terms &amp; Conditions]</div>
Custom Landing Page	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="text" value="http://"/>

Portal Customization	
<b>Logo Image</b>	Click the <b>Choose File</b> button to select an logo to use for the built-in portal.
<b>Message</b>	If you have any additional messages for your users, enter them in this field.
<b>Terms &amp; Conditions</b>	If you would like to use your own set of terms and conditions, please enter them here. If left empty, the built-in portal will display the default terms and conditions.
<b>Custom Landing Page</b>	Fill in this field to redirect clients to an external URL.

## 19 QoS

### 19.1.1 User Groups

LAN and PPTP clients can be categorized into three user groups - **Manager**, **Staff**, and **Guest**. This menu allows you to define rules and assign client IP addresses or subnets to a user group. You can apply different bandwidth and traffic prioritization policies on each user group in the **BandwidthControl** and **Application** sections.

The table is automatically sorted, and the table order signifies the rules' precedence. The smaller and more specific subnets are put towards the top of the table and have higher precedence; larger and less specific subnets are placed towards the bottom.

Click the **Add** button to define clients and their user group. Click the  button to remove the defined rule.

Two default rules are pre-defined and put at the bottom. They are **All DHCP reservation clients** and **Everyone**, and they cannot be removed. The **All DHCP reservation client represents** the LAN clients defined in the DHCP Reservation table on the LAN settings page. **Everyone** represents all clients that are not defined in any rule above. Click on a rule to change its group.

Subnet / IP Address	User Group	Action
Guest Computer	Guest	
All DHCP reservation clients	Manager	
Everyone		

**Add / Edit User Group** ✕

Client	Staff A
Subnet / IP Address	IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.99"/>
Group	Manager <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Staff A (192.168.1.99)</span>

Add / Edit User Group	
<b>Subnet / IP Address</b>	From the drop-down menu, choose whether you are going to define the client(s) by an <b>IP Address</b> or a <b>Subnet</b> . If <b>IP Address</b> is selected, enter a name defined in DHCP reservation table or a LAN client's IP address. If <b>Subnet</b> is selected, enter a subnet address and specify its subnet mask.
<b>Group</b>	This field is to define which <b>User Group</b> the specified subnet / IP address belongs to.

Once users have been assigned to a user group, their internet traffic will be restricted by rules defined for that particular group. Please refer to the following two sections for details.

### 19.1.2 Bandwidth Control

This section is to define how much minimum bandwidth will be reserved to each user group when a WAN connection is **in full load**. When this feature is enabled, a slider with two indicators will be shown. You can move the indicators to adjust each group's weighting. The lower part of the table shows the corresponding reserved download and uploads bandwidth value of each connection.

By default, **50%** of bandwidth has been reserved for Manager, **30%** for Staff, and **20%** for Guest.

Group Bandwidth Reservation				
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			
Group Reserved Bandwidth		↕	↕	
		<b>Manager</b>	<b>Staff</b>	<b>Guest</b>
	<b>% BW</b>	<b>50%</b>	<b>30%</b>	<b>20%</b>
	WAN1	50.0M/50.0M	30.0M/30.0M	20.0M/20.0M
	WAN2	3.9M/4.0M	2.3M/2.4M	1.6M/1.6M
WAN3	750k/1.0M	450k/614k	300k/410k	

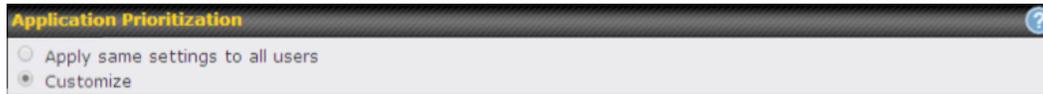
You can define a maximum download speed (over all WAN connections) and upload speed (for each WAN connection) that each individual Staff and Guest member can consume. No limit can be imposed on individual Managers. By default, download and upload bandwidth limits are set to unlimited (set as **0**).

Individual Bandwidth Limit					
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				
User Bandwidth Limit	Download		Upload		
	Manager: Unlimited		Unlimited		
	Staff:	20 Mbps	10 Mbps	(0: unlimited)	
	Guest:	500 Kbps	100 Kbps	(0: unlimited)	

### 19.1.3 Application

#### 19.1.3.1 Application Prioritization

You can choose whether to apply the same prioritization settings to all user groups or customize the settings for each group.



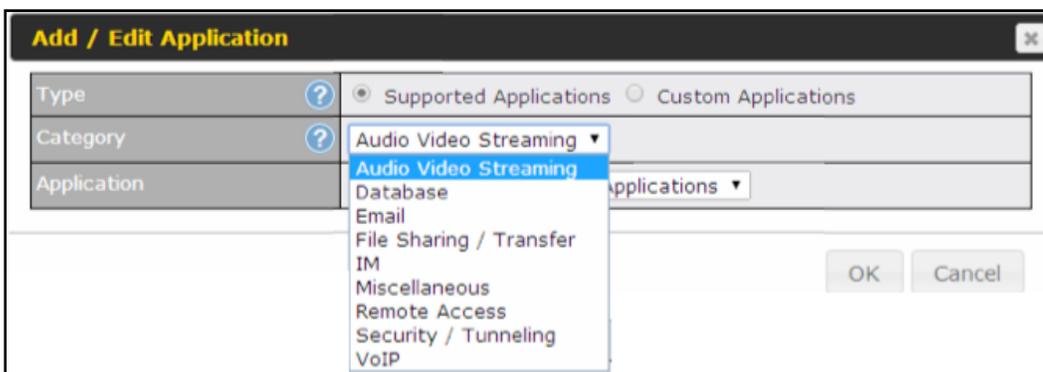
Three priority levels can be set for application prioritization: ↑ **High**, — **Normal**, and ↓ **Low**. The Peplink Balance can detect various application traffic types by inspecting the packet content. Select an application by choosing a supported application, or by defining a custom application manually. The priority preference of supported applications is placed at the top of the table. Custom applications are at the bottom.

Application	Priority			
	Manager	Staff	Guest	
All Supported Streaming Applications	↑ High	— Normal	↑ High	✘
All Email Protocols	↑ High	↑ High	↑ High	✘
MySQL	↑ High	— Normal	↓ Low	✘
SIP	↑ High	↓ Low	↓ Low	✘
Add				

#### 19.1.3.2 Prioritization for Custom Application

Click the **Add** button to define a custom application. Click the button  in the **Action** column to delete the custom application in the corresponding row.

When **Supported Applications** is selected, the Peplink Balance will inspect network traffic and prioritize the selected applications. Alternatively, you can select **Custom Applications** and define the application by providing the protocol, scope, port number, and DSCP value.



**Category** and **Application** availability will be different across different models of Peplink Balance.

### 19.1.3.3 DSL/Cable Optimization

DSL/cable-based WAN connections have lower upload bandwidth and higher download bandwidth.

When a DSL/cable circuit's uplink is congested, the download bandwidth will be affected. Users will not be able to download data at full speed until the uplink becomes less congested. **DSL/Cable Optimization** can relieve such an issue. When it is enabled, the download speed will become less affected by the upload traffic. By default, this feature is enabled.



## 20 Firewall

A firewall is a mechanism that selectively filters data traffic between the WAN side (the Internet) and the LAN side of the network. It can protect the local network from potential hacker attacks, access to offensive websites, and/or other inappropriate uses.

The firewall functionality of Peplink Balance supports the selective filtering of data traffic in both directions:

- Outbound (LAN to WAN)
- Inbound (WAN to LAN)

The firewall also supports the following functionality:

- Intrusion detection and DoS prevention
- Web blocking

With SpeedFusion™ enabled, the firewall rules also apply to VPN tunneled traffic.

**Outbound Firewall Rules** (Drag and drop rows to change rule order) ?

Rule	Protocol	Source IP Port	Destination IP Port	Policy
Default	Any	Any	Any	Allow

**Inbound Firewall Rules** (Drag and drop rows to change rule order) ?

Rule	Protocol	WAN	Source IP Port	Destination IP Port	Policy
Default	Any	Any	Any	Any	Allow

**Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention** ?

Disabled

### 20.1 Outbound and Inbound Firewall Rules

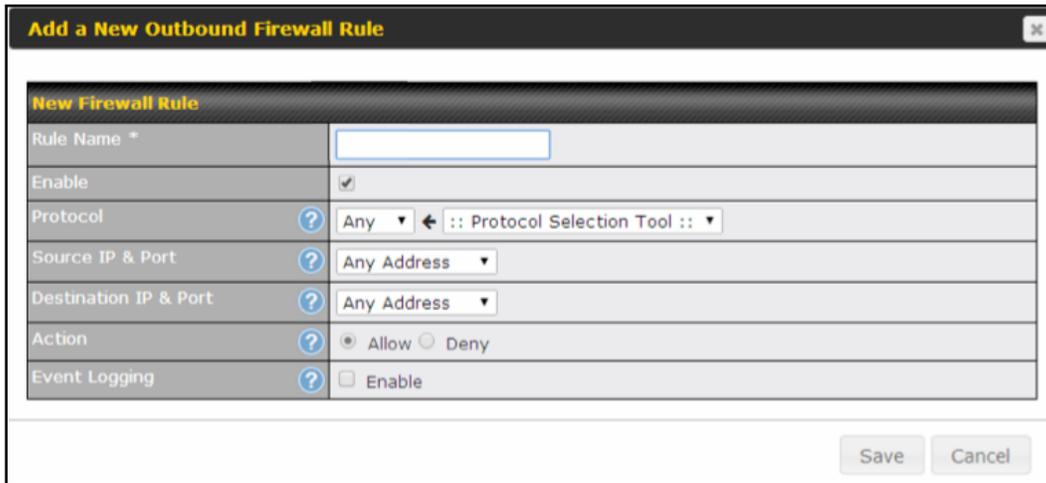
#### 20.1.1 Access Rules

The outbound firewall settings are located at **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**.

**Outbound Firewall Rules** (Drag and drop rows to change rule order) ?

Rule	Protocol	Source IP Port	Destination IP Port	Policy
Default	Any	Any	Any	Allow

Click **Add Rule** to display the following screen:

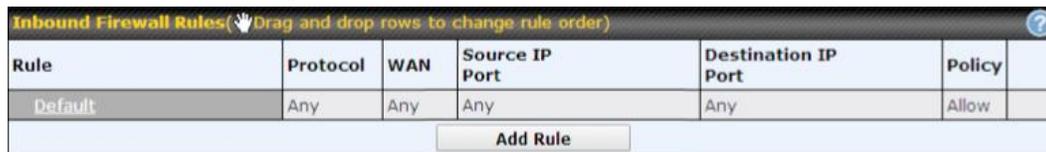


The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add a New Outbound Firewall Rule". It contains a form for configuring a new firewall rule. The form fields are:

- Rule Name: \* (text input)
- Enable:
- Protocol: Any (dropdown menu)
- Source IP & Port: Any Address (dropdown menu)
- Destination IP & Port: Any Address (dropdown menu)
- Action:  Allow  Deny
- Event Logging:  Enable

Buttons for "Save" and "Cancel" are located at the bottom right of the dialog box.

The inbound firewall settings are located at **Network > Firewall > Access Rules**.

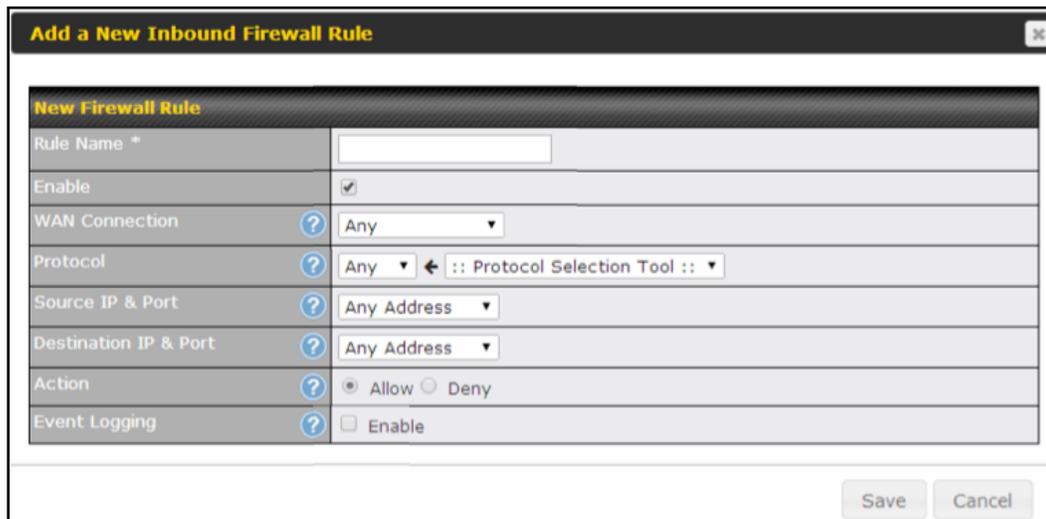


The screenshot shows a table titled "Inbound Firewall Rules" with a subtitle "(Drag and drop rows to change rule order)". The table has the following columns: Rule, Protocol, WAN, Source IP Port, Destination IP Port, Policy, and an empty column. The first row is labeled "Default" and has the following values: Any, Any, Any, Any, Any, Allow. An "Add Rule" button is located below the table.

Rule	Protocol	WAN	Source IP Port	Destination IP Port	Policy	
Default	Any	Any	Any	Any	Allow	

**Add Rule**

Click **Add Rule** to display the following window:

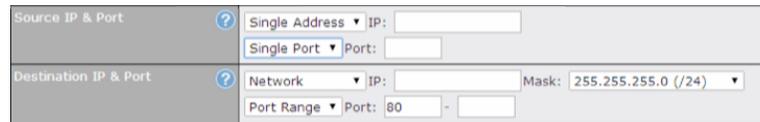


New Firewall Rule	
Rule Name *	<input type="text"/>
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN Connection	<input type="text" value="Any"/>
Protocol	<input type="text" value="Any"/> <input type="button" value=":: Protocol Selection Tool ::"/>
Source IP & Port	<input type="text" value="Any Address"/>
Destination IP & Port	<input type="text" value="Any Address"/>
Action	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Inbound / Outbound Firewall Settings	
<b>Rule Name</b>	This setting specifies a name for the firewall rule.
<b>Enable</b>	<p>This setting specifies whether the firewall rule should take effect.</p> <p>If the box is checked, the firewall rule takes effect. If the traffic matches the specified protocol/IP/port, actions will be taken by Peplink Balance based on the other parameters of the rule.</p> <p>If the box is not checked, the firewall rule does not take effect. The Peplink Balance will disregard the other parameters of the rule.</p>
<b>WAN Connection (Inbound)</b>	Select the WAN connection that this firewall rule should apply to.
<b>Protocol</b>	<p>This setting specifies the protocol to be matched.</p> <p>Via a drop-down menu, the following protocols can be specified:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TCP</li> <li>• UDP</li> <li>• ICMP</li> <li>• IP</li> </ul> <p>Alternatively, the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu can be used to automatically fill in the protocol and port number of common Internet services (e.g., HTTP, HTTPS, etc.) After selecting an item from the <b>Protocol Selection Tool</b> drop-down menu, the protocol and port number remains manually modifiable.</p>

### Source IP & Port

This specifies the source IP address(es) and port number(s) to be matched for the firewall rule. A single address, or a network, can be specified as the **Source IP & Port** setting, as indicated with the following screenshots:

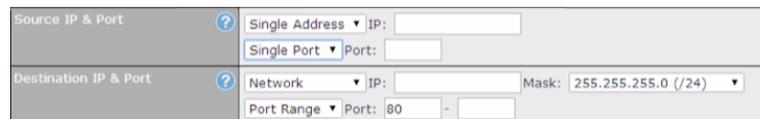


The screenshot shows a configuration form with two sections. The top section is labeled 'Source IP & Port' and contains a dropdown menu set to 'Single Address', an 'IP' input field, and a 'Port' input field. The bottom section is labeled 'Destination IP & Port' and contains a dropdown menu set to 'Network', an 'IP' input field, a 'Mask' dropdown menu set to '255.255.255.0 (/24)', and a 'Port Range' dropdown menu set to 'Port: 80'.

In addition, a single port, or a range of ports, can be specified for the **Source IP & Port** settings.

### Destination IP & Port

This specifies the destination IP address(es) and port number(s) to be matched for the firewall rule. A single address, or a network, can be specified as the **Destination IP & Port** setting, as indicated with the following screenshots:



The screenshot shows a configuration form with two sections. The top section is labeled 'Source IP & Port' and contains a dropdown menu set to 'Single Address', an 'IP' input field, and a 'Port' input field. The bottom section is labeled 'Destination IP & Port' and contains a dropdown menu set to 'Network', an 'IP' input field, a 'Mask' dropdown menu set to '255.255.255.0 (/24)', and a 'Port Range' dropdown menu set to 'Port: 80'.

In addition, a single port, or a range of ports, can be specified for the **Destination IP & Port** settings.

### Action

This setting specifies the action to be taken by the router upon encountering traffic that matches the both of the following:

- Source IP & port
- Destination IP & port

With the value of **Allow** for the **Action** setting, the matching traffic passes through the router (to be routed to the destination). If the value of the **Action** setting is set to **Deny**, the matching traffic does not pass through the router (and is discarded).

### Event Logging

This setting specifies whether or not to log matched firewall events. The logged messages are shown on the page **Status>Event Log**. A sample message is as follows:

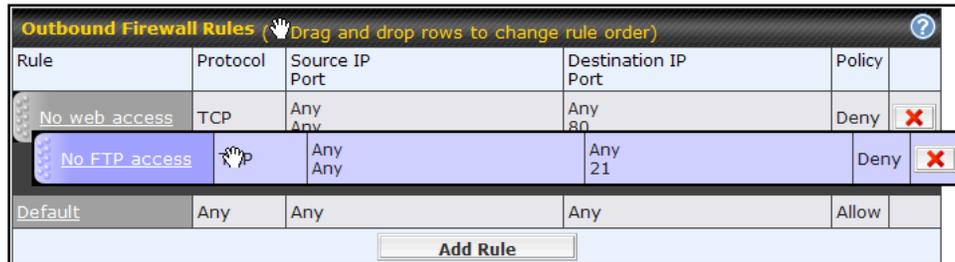
```
Aug 13 23:47:44 Denied CONN=Ethernet WAN SRC=20.3.2.1  
DST=192.168.1.20 LEN=48 PROTO=TCP SPT=2260 DPT=80
```

- **CONN:** The connection where the log entry refers to
- **SRC:** Source IP address
- **DST:** Destination IP address
- **LEN:** Packet length
- **PROTO:** Protocol
- **SPT:** Source port
- **DPT:** Destination port

Click **Save** to store your changes. To create an additional firewall rule, click **Add Rule** and repeat the above steps.

To change a rule's priority, simply drag and drop the rule:

- Hold the left mouse button on the rule.
- Move it to the desired position.
- Drop it by releasing the mouse button.



To remove a rule, click the  button.

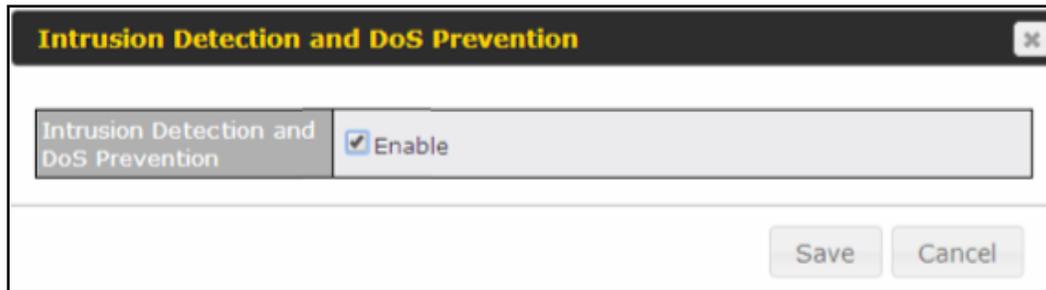
Rules are matched from top to the bottom. If a connection matches any one of the upper rules, the matching process will stop. If none of the rules match the connection, the **Default** rule will be applied.

The **Default** rule is **Allow** for both outbound and inbound access.

### Tip

If the default inbound rule is set to **Allow** for NAT-enabled WANs, no inbound Allow firewall rules will be required for inbound port forwarding and inbound NAT mapping rules. However, if the default inbound rule is set as **Deny**, a corresponding Allow firewall rule will be required.

### 20.1.1.1 Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention

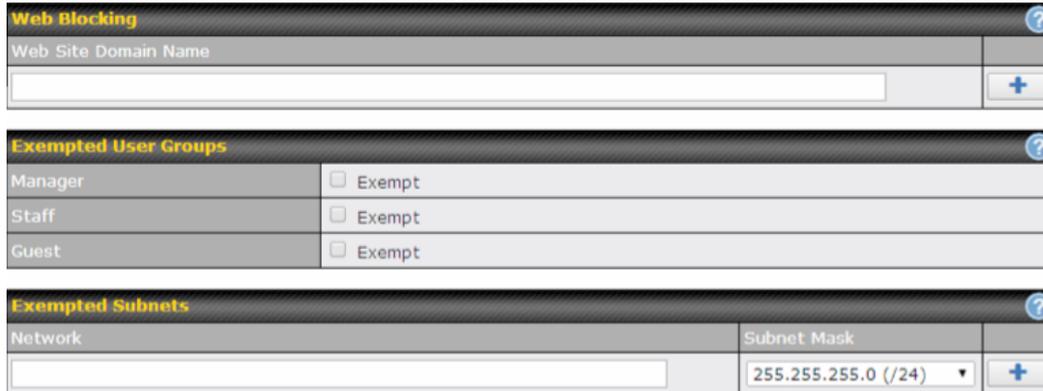


The Balance can detect and prevent intrusions and denial-of-service (DoS) attacks from the Internet. To turn on this feature, click , check the **Enable** check box for the **Intrusion Detection and DoS Prevention**, and press the **Save** button.

When this feature is enabled, the Balance will detect and prevent the following kinds of intrusions and denial-of-service attacks.

- Port scan
  - NMAP FIN/URG/PSH
  - Xmas tree
  - Another Xmas tree
  - Null scan
  - SYN/RST
  - SYN/FIN
- SYN flood prevention
- Ping flood attack prevention

## 20.1.2 Web Blocking



Web Blocking	
Web Site Domain Name	<input type="text"/>
	<input type="button" value="+"/>

Exempted User Groups	
Manager	<input type="checkbox"/> Exempt
Staff	<input type="checkbox"/> Exempt
Guest	<input type="checkbox"/> Exempt

Exempted Subnets	
Network	Subnet Mask
<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.0 (/24) <input type="button" value="+"/>

### 20.1.2.1 Web Blocking

Enter an appropriate website address, and the Peplink Balance will block and disallow LAN/PPTP/SpeedFusion™ peer clients to access these websites. Exceptions can be added using the instructions in **Sections 20.1.2.2** and **20.1.2.3**.

You may enter the wild card ".\*" at the end of a domain name to block any web site with a host name having the domain name in the middle. For example, If you enter "foobar.\*," then "www.foobar.com," "www.foobar.co.jp," or "foobar.co.uk" will be blocked. Placing the wild card in any other position is not supported.

The Peplink Balance will inspect and look for blocked domain names on all HTTP traffic. Secure web (HTTPS) traffic is not supported.

### 20.1.2.2 Exempted User Groups

Check and select pre-defined user group(s) who can be exempted from the access blocking rules. User groups can be defined at **QoS>User Groups** section. Please refer to **Section 19.1.1** for details.

### 20.1.2.3 Exempted Subnets

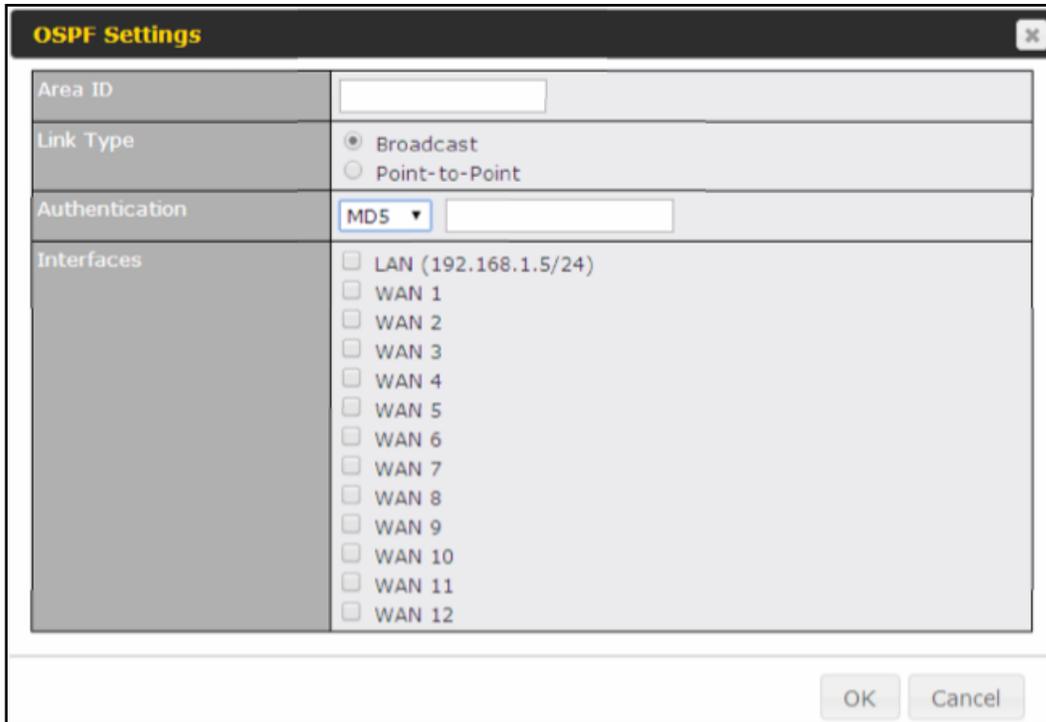
With the subnet defined in the field, clients on the particular subnet(s) can be exempted from the access blocking rules.

## 21 OSPF& RIPv2

The Balance Router supports OSPF and RIPv2 dynamic routing protocols. Click the **Network** tab from the top bar, and then click the **OSPF& RIPv2** item on the side bar to reach the following menu:



OSPF	
<b>Router ID</b>	This field determines the ID of the router. By default, this is specified as the LAN IP address. If you want to specify your own ID, enter it in the <b>Custom</b> field.
<b>Area</b>	This is an overview of the OSPFv2 areas you have defined. Click on the area name to configure it. To set a new area, click <b>Add</b> . To delete an existing area, click  .



OSPF Settings	
<b>Area ID</b>	Determine the name of your <b>Area ID</b> to apply to this group. Machines linked to this group will send and receive related OSPF packets, while unlinked machines will ignore it.
<b>Link Type</b>	Choose the network type that this area will use.
<b>Authentication</b>	Choose an authentication method, if one is used, from this drop-down menu. Available options are <b>MD5</b> and <b>Text</b> . Enter the authentication key next to the drop-down menu.
<b>Interfaces</b>	Determine which interfaces this areawill use to listen to and deliver OSPF packets

To access RIPv2 settings, click  .



RIPv2 Settings	
Authentication	None ▾
Interfaces	<input type="checkbox"/> LAN (192.168.1.5/24) <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11 <input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12

OK Cancel

RIPv2 Settings	
<b>Authentication</b>	Choose an authentication method, if one is used, from this drop-down menu. Available options are <b>MD5</b> and <b>Text</b> . Enter the authentication key next to the drop-down menu.
<b>Interfaces</b>	Determine which interfaces this group will use to listen to and deliver RIPv2 packets.

## 22 Miscellaneous Settings

The miscellaneous settings include configuration for high availability, PPTP server, service forwarding, and service passthrough.

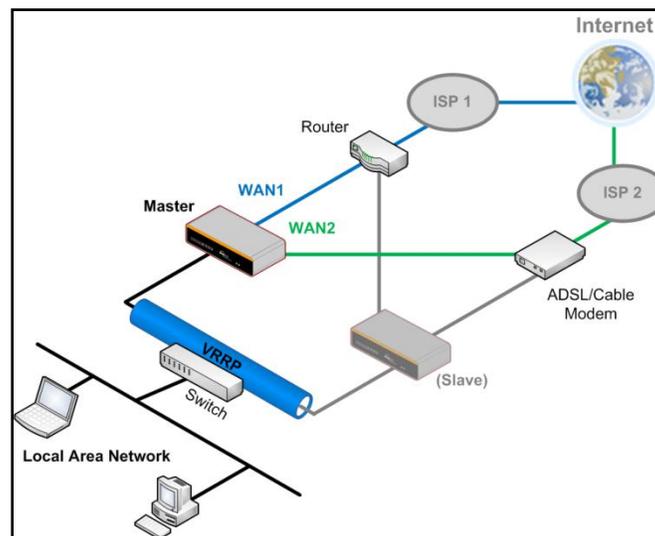
### 22.1 High Availability

The Peplink Balance supports high availability (HA) configurations via an open standard virtual router redundancy protocol (VRRP, RFC 3768).

In an HA configuration, two same-model Peplink Balance units (e.g., a pair of Peplink Balance 210 units or a pair of Peplink Balance 710 units) provide redundancy and failover in a master-slave arrangement. In the event that the master unit is down, the slave unit becomes active.

High availability will be disabled automatically where there is a drop-in connection configured on a LAN bypass port.

The following diagram illustrates an HA configuration with two Peplink Balance 210 units and two Internet connections:



In the diagram, the WAN ports of each Peplink Balance unit connect to the router and to the modem. Both Peplink Balance units connect to the same LAN switch via a LAN port.

An elaboration on the technical details of the implementation of virtual router redundancy protocol (VRRP, RFC 3768) by the Balance follows:

- In an HA configuration, the two Peplink Balance units communicate with each other using VRRP over the LAN.
- The two Peplink Balance units broadcast heartbeat signals to the LAN at a frequency of one heartbeat signal per second.
- In the event that no heartbeat signal from the master Peplink Balance unit is received in 3 seconds (or longer) since the last heartbeat signal, the slave Peplink Balance unit becomes active.
- The slave Peplink Balance unit initiates the WAN connections and binds to a previously configured LAN IP address.

- At a subsequent point when the master Peplink Balance unit recovers, it will once again become active.

You can configure high availability at **Network > Misc. Settings > High Availability**.

Interface for Master Router

Interface for Slave Router

High Availability	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Number	5
Preferred Role	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Master <input type="radio"/> Slave
Resume Master Role Upon Recovery	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Virtual IP	
LAN Administration IP	192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0

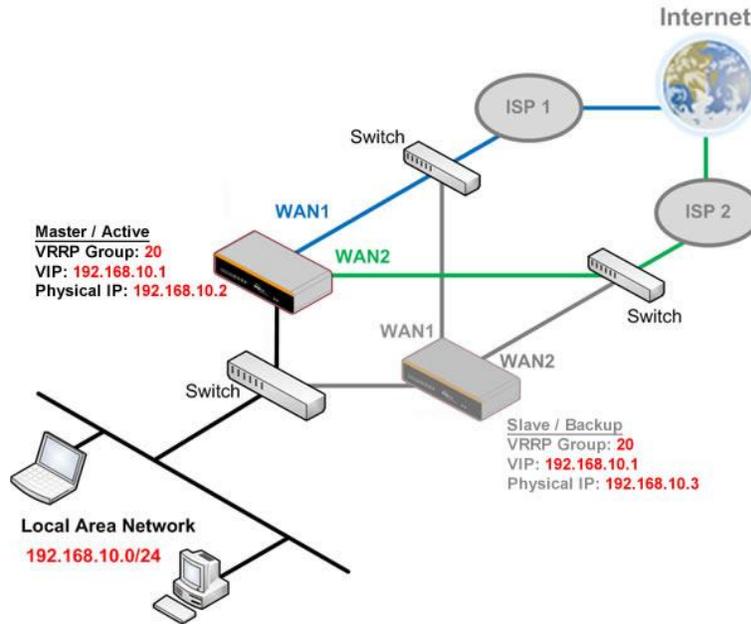
High Availability	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Group Number	5
Preferred Role	<input type="radio"/> Master <input checked="" type="radio"/> Slave
Configuration Sync.	<input type="checkbox"/> Master Serial Number: 54BF-5WEY-E37Q
Virtual IP	
LAN Administration IP	192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0

High Availability	
<b>Enable</b>	Checking this box specifies that the Peplink Balance unit is part of a high availability configuration.
<b>Group Number</b>	This number identifies a pair of Peplink Balance units operating in a high availability configuration. The two Peplink Balance units in the pair must have the same <b>Group Number</b> value.
<b>Preferred Role</b>	This setting specifies whether the Peplink Balance unit operates in master or slave mode. Click the corresponding radio button to set the role of the unit. One of the units in the pair must be configured as the master, and the other unit must be configured as the slave.
<b>Resume Master Role Upon Recovery</b>	This option is displayed when <b>Master</b> mode is selected in <b>Preferred Role</b> . If this option is enabled, once the device has recovered from an outage, it will take over and resume its <b>Master</b> role from the slave unit.
<b>Configuration Sync.</b>	This option is displayed when <b>Slave</b> mode is selected in <b>Preferred Role</b> . If this option is enabled and the <b>Master Serial Number</b> entered matches with the actual master unit's, the master unit will automatically transfer the configuration to this unit. Please make sure the <b>LAN IP Address</b> and the <b>Subnet Mask</b> fields are set correctly in the LAN settings page. You can refer to the <b>Event Log</b> for the configuration synchronization status.
<b>Master Serial Number</b>	If <b>Configuration Sync.</b> is checked, the serial number of the master unit is required here for the feature to work properly.
<b>Virtual IP</b>	The HA pair must share the same <b>Virtual IP</b> . The <b>Virtual IP</b> and the <b>LAN Administration IP</b> must be under the same network.
<b>LAN Administration IP</b>	This setting specifies a LAN IP address to be used for accessing administration functionality. This address should be unique within the LAN.

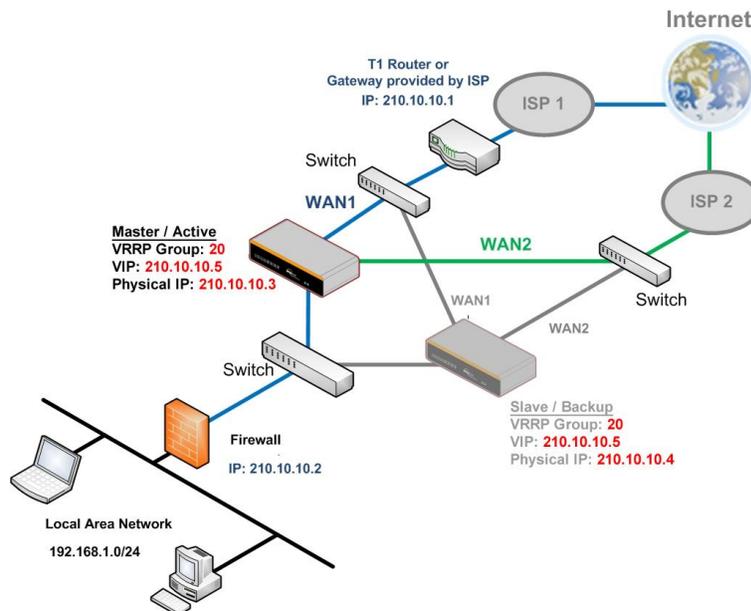
**Subnet Mask** This setting specifies the subnet mask of the LAN.

### Important Note

For Balance Routers in NAT mode, the virtual IP (VIP) should be set as the default gateway for all hosts sitting on the LAN segment. For example, a firewall sitting behind the Balance should set its default gateway as the virtual IP instead of the IP of the master Balance.

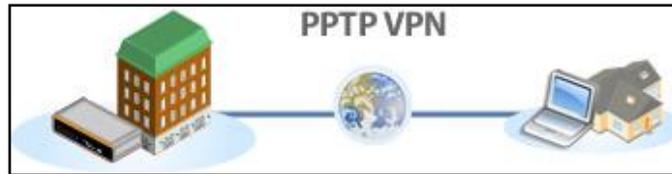


In drop-in mode, no other configuration needs to be set.



Please note that the drop-in WAN cannot be configured as a LAN bypass port while it is configured for high availability.

## 22.2 PPTP Server



The Peplink Balance has a built-in PPTP server, which enables remote computers to conveniently and securely access the local network. PPTP server settings are located at **Network>Misc. Settings>PPTP Server**.

Simply check the box to enable the PPTP server functionality. All connected PPTP sessions are displayed at **Status>Client List**. Please refer to **Section 26.3** for details.

PPTP Server	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Listen On	<b>Connection / IP Address(es)</b>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1 <span style="float: right;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)</span>
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 8
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 9
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 10
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 11
	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 12
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet	
Authentication	<input type="text" value="Local User Accounts"/>
User Accounts	<input type="text" value="Username"/>
	<input type="text" value="Password"/>
<input type="button" value="+"/>	

PPTP Server Setting	
<b>Listen On</b>	This setting is for specifying the WAN connection(s) and IP address(es) that the PPTP server should listen on.
<b>Authentication</b>	<p><b>(This option is only applicable on Peplink Balance 305/380+ and MediaFast 200+.)</b></p> <p>This setting is for specifying the user database source for PPTP authentication. Three sources can be selected: <b>Local User Accounts</b>, <b>LDAP Server</b>, or <b>RADIUS Server</b>.</p> <p><b>Local User Accounts</b> - User accounts are stored in the Peplink Balance locally. You can add/modify/delete accounts in the <b>User Accounts</b> table below.</p> <p><b>LDAP Server</b> - Authenticate with an external LDAP server. Tested with OpenLDAP server where passwords are NTLM hashed. Active Directory is not supported. (You can choose to use RADIUS to authenticate with a Windows Server.)</p>

	<p><b>RADIUS Server</b> - Authenticate with an external RADIUS server. Tested with Microsoft Windows Internet Authentication Service and FreeRADIUS servers where passwords are NTLM hashed or in plain text.</p>
<b>User Accounts</b>	<p>This setting allows you to define PPTP user accounts for authentication via local user accounts. Click <b>Add</b> to input username and password to create an account. After adding the user accounts, you can click on a username to edit the account password. Click  to delete the account in its corresponding row.</p>

**Important Note**

The PPTP server will be disabled automatically if the Balance is deployed in drop-in mode.

### 22.3 Certificate Manager

Certificate Manager		
VPN Certificate	 No Certificate	<a href="#">Assign</a>
Web Admin SSL Certificate	 No Certificate	<a href="#">Assign</a>
Captive Portal SSL Certificate	No Certificate	<a href="#">Assign</a>

This section allows you to assign certificates for local VPN and web admin SSL. The local keys will not be transferred to another device by any means.

### 22.4 Service Forwarding

Service forwarding settings are located at **Network > Misc. Settings > Service Forwarding**.

<b>SMTP Forwarding Setup</b> 	
SMTP Forwarding	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>Web Proxy Forwarding Setup</b> 	
Web Proxy Forwarding	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable
<b>DNS Forwarding Setup</b> 	
Forward Outgoing DNS Requests to Local DNS Proxy	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Service Forwarding	
<b>SMTP Forwarding</b>	When this option is enabled, all outgoing SMTP connections destined for any host at TCP port 25 will be intercepted. These connections will be redirected to a specified SMTP server and port number. SMTP server settings for each WAN can be specified after selecting <b>Enable</b> .
<b>Web Proxy Forwarding</b>	When this option is enabled, all outgoing connections destined for the proxy server specified in <b>Web Proxy Interception Settings</b> will be intercepted. These connections will be redirected to a specified web proxy server and port number. Web proxy interception settings and proxy server settings for each WAN can be specified after selecting <b>Enable</b> .
<b>DNS Forwarding</b>	When this option is enabled, all outgoing DNS lookups will be intercepted and redirected to the built-in DNS name server.

If any LAN device is using the DNS name servers of a WAN connection, you may want to enable this option to enhance the DNS availability without modifying the DNS server setting of the clients. The built-in DNS name server will distribute DNS lookups to corresponding DNS servers of all available WAN connections. In this case, DNS service will not be interrupted, even if any WAN connection is down.

### 22.4.1 SMTP Forwarding

Some ISPs require their users to send e-mails via the ISP's SMTP server. All outgoing SMTP connections are blocked except those connecting to the ISP's. The Peplink Balance supports the interception and redirection of all outgoing SMTP connections (destined for TCP port 25) via a WAN connection to the WAN's corresponding SMTP server.



The screenshot shows the 'SMTP Forwarding Setup' configuration page. At the top, there is a toggle switch for 'SMTP Forwarding' which is currently set to 'Enable'. Below this is a table with four columns: 'Connection', 'Enable Forwarding?', 'SMTP Server', and 'SMTP Port'. The table lists four WAN connections: WAN 1, WAN 2, WAN 3, and WAN 4. WAN 2 and WAN 3 have their 'Enable Forwarding?' checkboxes checked and have specific SMTP server addresses and port numbers (25) entered. WAN 1 and WAN 4 have their checkboxes unchecked and no server information entered.

Connection	Enable Forwarding?	SMTP Server	SMTP Port
WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>		
WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22.2.2.2	25
WAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	33.3.3.2	25
WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>		

To enable the feature, select **Enable** under **SMTP Forwarding Setup**. Check **Enable Forwarding** for the WAN connection(s) that needs forwarding. Under **SMTP Server**, enter the ISP's e-mail server host name or IP address. Under **SMTP Port**, enter the TCP port number for each WAN.

The Peplink Balance will intercept SMTP connections. Choose a WAN port according to the outbound policy, and then forward the connection to the SMTP server, if the chosen WAN has enabled forwarding. If the forwarding is disabled for a WAN connection, SMTP connections for the WAN will be simply be forwarded to the connection's original destination.

#### Note

If you want to route all SMTP connections only to particular WAN connection(s), you should create a custom rule in outbound policy (see Section 15.1).

### 22.4.2 Web Proxy Forwarding



**Web Proxy Forwarding Setup**

Web Proxy Forwarding  Enable

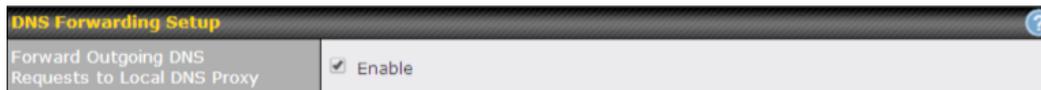
**Web Proxy Interception Settings**

Proxy Server IP Address  Port   
(Current settings in users' browser)

Connection	Enable Forwarding?	Proxy Server IP Address : Port
WAN 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/>
WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="22.2.2.2"/> : <input type="text" value="8765"/>
WAN 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="33.3.3.2"/> : <input type="text" value="8080"/>
WAN 4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/>

When this feature is enabled, the Peplink Balance will intercept all outgoing connections destined for the proxy server specified in **Web Proxy Server Interception Settings**. Then it will choose a WAN connection according to the outbound policy and forward the connection to the specified web proxy server and port number. Redirected server settings for each WAN can be set here. If forwarding is disabled for a WAN, then web proxy connections for that WAN will simply be forwarded to the connection's original destination.

### 22.4.3 DNS Forwarding



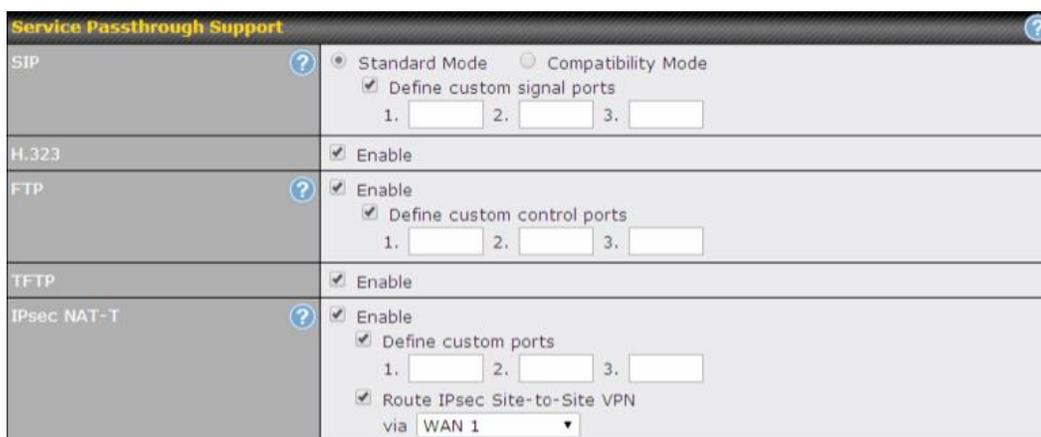
**DNS Forwarding Setup**

Forward Outgoing DNS Requests to Local DNS Proxy  Enable

When DNS forwarding is enabled, all clients' outgoing DNS requests will also be intercepted and forwarded to the built-in DNS proxy server.

## 22.5 Service Passthrough

Service passthrough settings can be found at **Network > Misc. Settings > Service Passthrough**.



**Service Passthrough Support**

SIP  ?  Standard Mode  Compatibility Mode  
 Define custom signal ports  
1.  2.  3.

H.323  Enable

FTP  ?  Enable  
 Define custom control ports  
1.  2.  3.

TFTP  Enable

IPsec NAT-T  ?  Enable  
 Define custom ports  
1.  2.  3.   
 Route IPsec Site-to-Site VPN  
via

(Registered trademarks are copyrighted by their respective owner)

Some Internet services need to be specially handled in a multi-WAN environment. The Peplink Balance can handle these services such that Internet applications do not notice it is behind a multi-WAN router. Settings for service passthrough support are available here.

Service Passthrough Support	
<b>SIP</b>	<p>Session initiation protocol, aka SIP, is a voice-over-IP protocol. The Peplink Balance can act as a SIP application layer gateway (ALG) which binds connections for the same SIP session to the same WAN connection and translate IP address in the SIP packets correctly in NAT mode. Such passthrough support is always enabled and there are two modes for selection: <b>Standard Mode</b> and <b>Compatibility Mode</b>.</p> <p>If your SIP server's signal port number is non-standard, you can check the box <b>Define custom signal ports</b> and input the port numbers to the text boxes.</p>
<b>H.323</b>	<p>With this option enabled, protocols that provide audio-visual communication sessions will be defined on any packet network and passthrough the Balance.</p>
<b>FTP</b>	<p>FTP sessions consist of two TCP connections; one for control and one for data. In a multi-WAN situation, they must be routed to the same WAN connection. Otherwise, problems will arise in transferring files. By default, the Peplink Balance monitors TCP control connections on port 21 for any FTP connections and binds TCP connections of the same FTP session to the same WAN.</p> <p>If you have an FTP server listening on a port number other than 21, you can check <b>Define custom control ports</b> and enter the port numbers in the text boxes.</p>
<b>TFTP</b>	<p>The Peplink Balance monitors outgoing TFTP connections and routes any incoming TFTP data packets back to the client. Select <b>Enable</b> if you want to enable TFTP passthrough support.</p>
<b>IPsec NAT-T</b>	<p>This field is for enabling the support of IPsec NAT-T passthrough. UDP ports 500, 4500, and 10000 are monitored by default.</p> <p>You may add more custom data ports that your IPsec system uses by checking <b>Define custom ports</b>. If the VPN contains IPsec site-to-site VPN traffic, check <b>Route IPsec Site-to-Site VPN</b> and choose the WAN connection to route the traffic to.</p>

## 23 AP

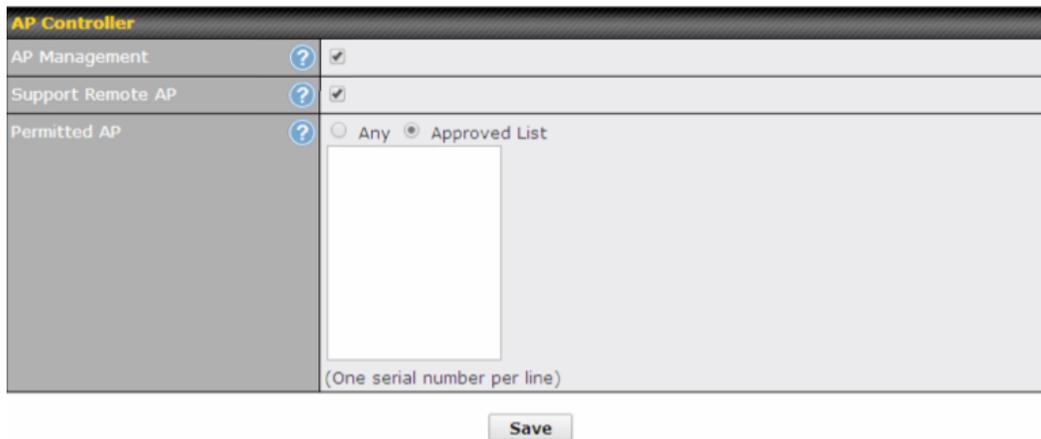
The AP controller acts as a centralized controller of Pepwave AP devices. With this feature, users will be able to customize and manage multiple APs from a single Peplink Balance interface.

### Special Note

Each Balance router can control a limited number of routers without cost. To manage more, a Full Edition license is required. Please contact your Authorized Reseller or the Peplink Sales Team to obtain more information and price details.

### 23.1 AP Controller

Clicking on the **AP** tab will default to this menu, where you can view basic AP management options:



### APController

#### AP Management

The AP controller for managing Pepwave APs can be enabled by checking this box. When this option is enabled, the AP controller will wait for management connections originating from APs over the LAN on TCP and UDP port 11753. It will also wait for captive portal connections on TCP port 443. An extended DHCP option, **CAPWAP Access Controller addresses** (field 138), will be added to the DHCP server. A local DNS record, **AP Controller**, will be added to the local DNS proxy.

#### Support Remote AP

The AP controller supports remote management of Pepwave APs. When this option is enabled, the AP controller will wait for management connections originating from remote APs over the WAN on TCP and UDP port 11753. It will also wait for captive portal connections on TCP port 443.

The DHCP server and/or local DNS server of the remote AP's network should be configured in the **DNS Proxy Settings** menu under **Network>LAN**. The procedure is as follows:

1. Define an extended DHCP option, **CAPWAP Access Controller addresses** (field 138), in the DHCP server, where the values are the AP controller's public IP addresses; and/or
2. Create a local DNS record for the AP controller with a value corresponding to the AP controller's public IP address.



DNS Proxy Settings			
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
DNS Caching	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Include Google Public DNS Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Local DNS Records		Host Name	IP Address
		wlancontroller	10.10.10.1

**Permitted AP**

Access points to manage can be specified here. If **Any** is selected, the AP controller will manage any AP that reports to it. If **Approved List** is selected, only APs with serial numbers listed in the provided text box will be managed.

### 23.2 Wireless SSID

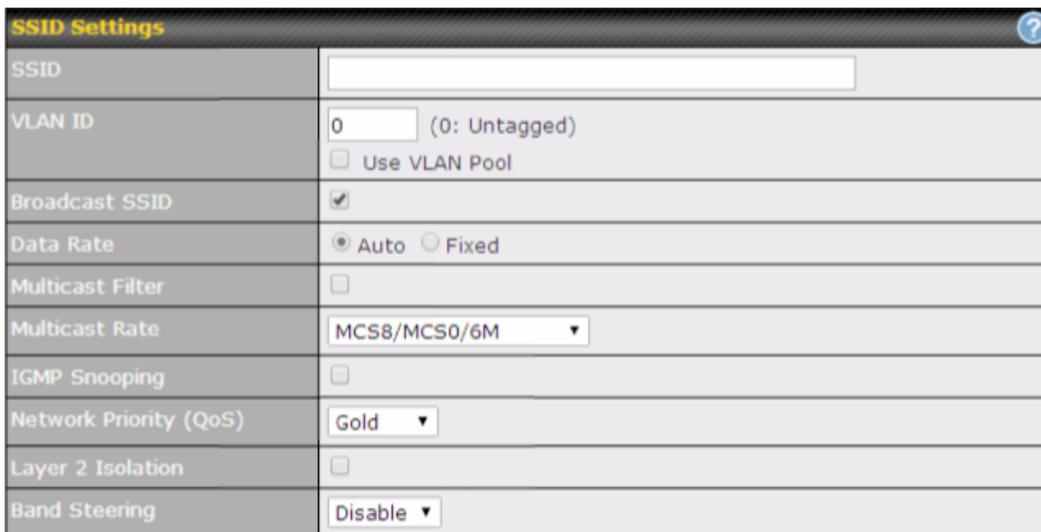
Wireless network settings, including the name of the network (SSID) and security policy, can be defined and managed in this section. After defining a wireless network, users can choose the network in **AP Profiles**.



SSID	Security Policy
PEPWAVE_8D1C	WPA/WPA2 - Personal

New SSID

Click the button **New SSID** to create a new network profile, or click the existing network profile to modify its settings.

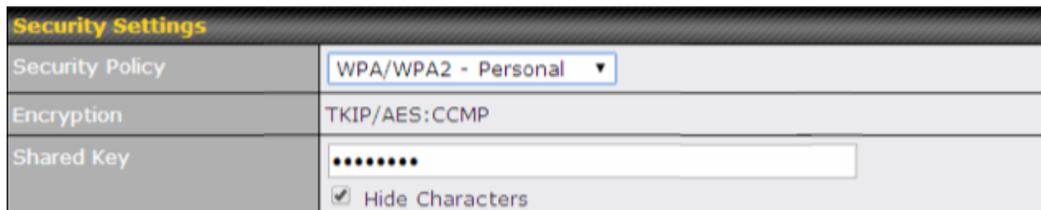


SSID Settings	
SSID	<input type="text"/>
VLAN ID	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0: Untagged) <input type="checkbox"/> Use VLAN Pool
Broadcast SSID	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Data Rate	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Fixed
Multicast Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Multicast Rate	<input type="text" value="MCS8/MCS0/6M"/>
IGMP Snooping	<input type="checkbox"/>
Network Priority (QoS)	<input type="text" value="Gold"/>
Layer 2 Isolation	<input type="checkbox"/>
Band Steering	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>

SSID Settings	
<b>SSID</b>	This setting specifies the SSID of the virtual AP to be scanned by Wi-Fi clients.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	This setting specifies the VLAN ID to be tagged on all outgoing packets generated from this wireless network (i.e., packets that travel from the Wi-Fi segment through the Pepwave AP One unit to the Ethernet segment via the LAN port). The default value of this setting is <b>0</b> , which means VLAN tagging is disabled (instead of tagged with zero).
<b>Broadcast SSID</b>	This setting specifies whether or not Wi-Fi clients can scan the SSID of this wireless network. <b>Broadcast SSID</b> is enabled by default.

<b>Data Rate</b> <sup>A</sup>	Select <b>Auto</b> to allow the Peplink Balance to set the data rate automatically, or select <b>Fixed</b> and choose a rate from the displayed drop-down menu.
<b>Multicast Filter</b> <sup>A</sup>	This setting enables the filtering of multicast network traffic to the wireless SSID.
<b>Multicast Rate</b> <sup>A</sup>	This setting specifies the transmit rate to be used for sending multicast network traffic. The selected <b>Protocol</b> and <b>Channel Bonding</b> settings will affect the rate options and values available here.
<b>IGMP Snooping</b> <sup>A</sup>	To allow the Peplink Balance to listen to internet group management protocol (IGMP) network traffic, select this option.
<b>DHCP Option 82</b> <sup>A</sup>	If you use a distributed DHCP server/relay environment, you can enable this option to provide additional information on the manner in which clients are physically connected to the network.
<b>Network Priority (QoS)</b> <sup>A</sup>	Select from <b>Gold</b> , <b>Silver</b> , and <b>Bronze</b> to control the QoS priority of this wireless network's traffic.
<b>Layer 2 Isolation</b> <sup>A</sup>	<b>Layer 2</b> refers to the second layer in the ISO Open System Interconnect model. When this option is enabled, clients on the same VLAN, SSID, or subnet are isolated to that VLAN, SSID, or subnet, which can enhance security. Traffic is passed to upper communication layer(s). By default, the setting is disabled.
<b>Band Steering</b> <sup>A</sup>	Band steering allows the Peplink Balance to steer AP clients from the 2.4 GHz band to the 5GHz band for better usage of bandwidth. To make steering mandatory, select <b>Enforce</b> . To cause the Peplink Balance to preferentially choose steering, select <b>Prefer</b> . The default for this setting is <b>Disable</b> .

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature. Click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.



The screenshot shows a 'Security Settings' window with the following fields:

- Security Policy:** WPA/WPA2 - Personal (dropdown menu)
- Encryption:** TKIP/AES:CCMP
- Shared Key:** A text input field containing seven asterisks (\*\*\*\*\*). Below it is a checked checkbox labeled 'Hide Characters'.

Security Settings	
<b>Security Policy</b>	This setting configures the wireless authentication and encryption methods. Available options are <b>Open (No Encryption)</b> , <b>WPA/WPA2 - Personal</b> , <b>WPA/WPA2 - Enterprise</b> and <b>Static WEP</b> .

Access Control	
Restricted Mode	None ▼

Access Control	
<b>Restricted Mode</b>	<p>The settings allow administrator to control access using Mac address filtering. Available options are <b>None</b>, <b>Deny all except listed</b>, <b>Accept all except listed</b>, and <b>RADIUS MAC Authentication</b>.</p> <p>When <b>WPA/WPA2 - Enterprise</b> is configured, RADIUS-based 802.1 x authentication is enabled. Under this configuration, the <b>Shared Key</b> option should be disabled. When using this method, select the appropriate version using the <b>V1/V2</b> controls. The security level of this method is known to be very high.</p> <p>When <b>WPA/WPA2- Personal</b> is configured, a shared key is used for data encryption and authentication. When using this configuration, the <b>Shared Key</b> option should be enabled. Key length must be between eight and 63 characters (inclusive). The security level of this method is known to be high.</p> <p>The configuration of <b>Static WEP</b> parameters enables pre-shared WEP key encryption. Authentication is not supported by this method. The security level of this method is known to be weak.</p>
<b>MAC Address List</b>	Connection coming from the MAC addresses in this list will be either denied or accepted based the option selected in the previous field.

RADIUS Server Settings	Primary Server	Secondary Server
Host	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Secret	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Authentication Port	<input type="text" value="1812"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>	<input type="text" value="1812"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Accounting Port	<input type="text" value="1813"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>	<input type="text" value="1813"/> <input type="button" value="Default"/>

RADIUS Server Settings	
<b>Host</b>	Enter the IP address of the primary RADIUS server and, if applicable, the secondary RADIUS server.
<b>Secret</b>	Enter the RADIUS shared secret for the primary server and, if applicable, the secondary RADIUS server.
<b>Authentication Port</b>	In field, enter the UDP authentication port(s) used by your RADIUS server(s) or click the <b>Default</b> button to enter <b>1812</b> .
<b>Accounting Port</b>	In field, enter the UDP accounting port(s) used by your RADIUS server(s) or click the <b>Default</b> button to enter <b>1813</b> .

Guest Protect			
Block All Private IP	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Custom Subnet	Network	Subnet Mask	
	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾	<input type="button" value="+"/>
Block Exception	Network	Subnet Mask	
	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.0 (/24) ▾	<input type="button" value="+"/>
Block PepVPN	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Guest Protect	
<b>Block All Private IP</b>	Check this box to deny all connection attempts by private IP addresses.
<b>Custom Subnet</b>	To create a custom subnet for guest access, enter the IP address and choose a subnet mask from the drop-down menu. To add the new subnet, click <input type="button" value="+"/> . To delete a custom subnet, click <input type="button" value="X"/> .
<b>Block Exception</b>	To block access from a particular subnet, enter the IP address and choose a subnet mask from the drop-down menu. To add the new subnet, click <input type="button" value="+"/> . To delete a blocked subnet, click <input type="button" value="X"/> .
<b>Block PepVPN</b>	To block PepVPN access, check this box.

Bandwidth Management		
Upstream Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/>	kbps (0: Unlimited)
Downstream Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/>	kbps (0: Unlimited)
Client Upstream Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/>	kbps (0: Unlimited)
Client Downstream Limit	<input type="text" value="0"/>	kbps (0: Unlimited)
Max number of Clients	<input type="text" value="0"/>	(0: Unlimited)

Bandwidth Management	
<b>Upstream Limit</b>	Enter a value in kbps to limit the wireless network's upstream bandwidth. Enter <b>0</b> to allow unlimited upstream bandwidth.
<b>Downstream Limit</b>	Enter a value in kbps to limit the wireless network's downstream bandwidth. Enter <b>0</b> to allow unlimited downstream bandwidth.
<b>Client Upstream Limit</b>	Enter a value in kbps to limit connected clients' upstream bandwidth. Enter <b>0</b> to allow unlimited upstream bandwidth.
<b>Client Downstream Limit</b>	Enter a value in kbps to limit connected clients' downstream bandwidth. Enter <b>0</b> to allow unlimited downstream bandwidth.
<b>Max Number of Clients</b>	Enter the maximum number of clients that can simultaneously connect to the wireless network or enter <b>0</b> to allow an unlimited number of connections.

Firewall Settings							
Firewall Mode	Lockdown - Block all except... ▾						
Firewall Exceptions	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Item</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: center;">New Rule</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Type	Item	New Rule		
Name	Type	Item					
New Rule							

**Firewall Settings**

**Firewall Mode** Choose Flexible – **Allow all except...** or **Lockdown – Block all except...** to turn on the firewall, then create rules for the firewall exceptions by clicking **New Rule**. See the discussion below for details on creating a firewall rule. To delete a rule, click the associated  button. To turn off the firewall, select **Disable**.

Firewall Rule	
Name	<input type="text"/>
Type	Port ▾
Protocol	TCP ▾
Port	Any Port ▾

OK Cancel

Firewall Rule	
<b>Name</b>	Enter a descriptive name for the firewall rule in this field.
<b>Type</b>	Choose <b>Port</b> , <b>Domain</b> , <b>IP Address</b> , or <b>MAC Address</b> to allow or deny traffic from any of those identifiers. Depending on the option chosen, the following fields will vary.
<b>Protocol / Port</b>	Choose <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> from the <b>Protocol</b> drop-down menu to allow or deny traffic using either of those protocols. From the <b>Port</b> drop-down menu, choose <b>Any Port</b> to allow or deny TCP or UDP traffic on any port. Choose <b>Single Port</b> and then enter a port number in the provided field to allow or block TCP or UDP traffic from that port only. You can also choose <b>Port Range</b> and enter a range of ports in the provided fields to allow or deny TCP or UDP traffic from the specified port range.
<b>IP Address / Subnet Mask</b>	If you have chosen <b>IP Address</b> as your firewall rule type, enter the IP address and subnet mask identifying the subnet to allow or deny.
<b>MAC Address</b>	If you have chosen <b>MAC Address</b> as your firewall rule type, enter the MAC address identifying the machine to allow or deny.

### 23.3 Profiles

AP profiles assigned to each Pepwave AP device can be configured at **AP>Profiles**.

Name	Used by	Action
1. Default	(None)	Clone
New AP Profile		

Each AP is associated with one AP profile. By default, all devices are associated with the first (default) profile. The default profile cannot be removed.

You can define an AP profile by clicking the **New AP Profile** button. Click the **Clone** button of an existing profile to create a new profile based on it. To change the settings of an existing profile, click the profile name, and the following screen will be shown:

AP Settings	
AP Profile Name	<input type="text"/>
SSID	<input type="checkbox"/> 2.4 GHz <input type="checkbox"/> 5 GHz <input type="checkbox"/> PEPLINK_09DC
Operating Country	United States
Preferred Frequency	<input checked="" type="radio"/> 2.4 GHz <input type="radio"/> 5 GHz
5 GHz Protocol	802.11na
5 GHz Channel Bonding	20 MHz
5 GHz Channel	Auto <input type="button" value="Edit"/> Channels: 36 40 44 48 ...
2.4 GHz Protocol	802.11ng
2.4 GHz Channel Bonding	20 MHz
2.4 GHz Channel	1 (2.412 GHz)
Management VLAN ID	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0: Untagged)
Power Boost	<input type="checkbox"/>
Output Power	Dynamic: Auto
Operating Schedule	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Always On <input type="radio"/> Custom Schedule
Max number of Clients	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0: Unlimited)
Client Signal Strength Threshold	<input type="text" value="0"/> (0: Unlimited)
Beacon Rate	1Mbps <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Beacon Interval	100ms
DTIM	1 <input type="button" value="Default"/>
RTS Threshold	0 <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Slot Time	9 <input type="text"/> $\mu$ s <input type="button" value="Default"/>
ACK Timeout	48 <input type="text"/> $\mu$ s <input type="button" value="Default"/>
Frame Aggregation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Frame Length	50000 <input type="button" value="Default"/>

AP Settings	
<b>AP Profile Name</b>	This field specifies the name of this AP profile.
<b>SSID</b>	These buttons specify which wireless networks will use this AP profile. You can also select the frequencies at which each network will transmit. Please note that the Peplink Balance does not detect whether the AP is capable of transmitting at both frequencies. Instructions to transmit at unsupported frequencies will be ignored by the AP.
<b>Operating Country</b>	<p>This drop-down menu specifies the national / regional regulations which the AP should follow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a North American region is selected, RF channels 1 to 11 will be available and the maximum transmission power will be 26 dBm (400 mW).</li> <li>• If European region is selected, RF channels 1 to 13 will be available. The maximum transmission power will be 20 dBm (100 mW).</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Users are required to choose an option suitable to local laws and regulations. Per FCC regulation, the country selection is not available on all models marketed in US. All US models are fixed to US channels only.</p>
<b>Preferred Frequency</b>	These buttons determine the frequency at which access points will attempt to broadcast. This feature will only work for APs that can transmit at both 5.4GHz and 5GHz frequencies.
<b>5 GHz Protocol</b>	This section displays the 5 GHz protocols your APs are using.
<b>5GHz Channel Bonding</b>	There are three options: 20 MHz, 20/40 MHz, and 40 MHz. With this feature enabled, the Wi-Fi system can use two channels at once. Using two channels improves the performance of the Wi-Fi connection.
<b>5 GHz Channel</b>	This drop-down menu selects the 5 GHz 802.11 channel to be utilized. If <b>Auto</b> is set, the system will perform channel scanning based on the scheduled time set and choose the most suitable channel automatically.
<b>2.4 GHz Protocol</b>	This section displays the 2.4 GHz protocols your APs are using.
<b>2.4 GHz Channel Bonding</b>	There are three options: 20 MHz, 20/40 MHz, and 40 MHz. With this feature enabled, the Wi-Fi system can use two channels at once. Using two channels improves the performance of the Wi-Fi connection.
<b>2.4 GHz Channel</b>	This drop-down menu selects the 802.11 channel to be utilized. Available options are from 1 to 11 and from 1 to 13 for the North America region and Europe region, respectively. (Channel 14 is only available when the country is selected as Japan with protocol 802.11b.) If <b>Auto</b> is set, the system will perform channel scanning based on the scheduled time set and choose the most suitable channel automatically.
<b>Management VLAN ID</b>	This field specifies the VLAN ID to tag to management traffic, such as AP to AP controller communication traffic. The value is <b>0</b> by default, meaning that no VLAN tagging will be applied. NOTE: change this value with caution as alterations may result in loss of connection to the AP controller.
<b>Power Boost<sup>A</sup></b>	With this option enabled, the AP under this profile will transmit using additional power. Please note that using this option with several APs in close proximity will lead to increased interference.

**Output Power<sup>A</sup>**

This drop-down menu determines the power at which the AP under this profile will broadcast. When fixed settings are selected, the AP will broadcast at the specified power level, regardless of context. When **Dynamic** settings are selected, the AP will adjust its power level based on its surrounding APs in order to maximize performance.

The **Dynamic: Auto** setting will set the AP to do this automatically. Otherwise, the **Dynamic: Manual** setting will set the AP to dynamically adjust only of instructed to do so. If you have set **Dynamic:Manual**, you can go to **AP>Toolbox>Auto Power Adj.** to give your AP further instructions.

**Operating Schedule<sup>A</sup>**

These buttons determine the time period at which the AP under this profile will be activated. Clicking the **Custom Schedule** option will open the following diagram:

Custom Operating Schedule																							
	Midnight			4am			8pm			Noon			4pm			8pm							
Sunday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Monday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Tuesday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Wednesday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Thursday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Friday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
Saturday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																				
																				On <input type="checkbox"/>	Off <input type="checkbox"/>		

Click the desired time periods to toggle the activation state of APs under this profile.

**Max number of Clients<sup>A</sup>**

This field determines the maximum clients that can be connected to APs under this profile.

**Client Signal Strength Threshold<sup>A</sup>**

This field determines that maximum signal strength each individual client will receive. The measurement unit is megawatts.

**Beacon Rate<sup>A</sup>**

This drop-down menu provides the option to send beacons in different transmit bit rates. The bit rates are **1Mbps**, **2Mbps**, **5.5Mbps**, **6Mbps**, and **11Mbps**.

**Beacon Interval<sup>A</sup>**

This drop-down menu provides the option to set the time between each beacon send. Available options are **100ms**, **250ms**, and **500ms**.

**DTIM<sup>A</sup>**

This field provides the option to set the frequency for beacon to include delivery traffic indication messages (DTIM). The interval unit is measured in milliseconds.

**RTS Threshold<sup>A</sup>**

This field provides the option to set the minimum packet size for the unit to send an RTS using the RTS/CTS handshake. Setting **0** disables this feature.

**Slot Time<sup>A</sup>**

This field provides the option to modify the unit wait time before it transmits. The default value is **9µs**.

**ACK Timeout<sup>A</sup>**

This field provides the option to set the wait time to receive acknowledgement packet before doing retransmission. The default value is **48µs**.

**Frame Aggregation<sup>A</sup>**

With this feature enabled, throughput will be increased by sending two or more data frames in a single transmission.

**Frame Length**

This field is only available when **Frame Aggregation** is enabled. It specifies the frame length for frame aggregation. By default, it is set to **50000**.

<sup>A</sup> - Advanced feature. Click the  button on the top right-hand corner to activate.

Web Administration Settings (on External AP)	
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Web Access Protocol	<input type="radio"/> HTTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> HTTPS
Management Port	<input type="text" value="443"/>
HTTP to HTTPS Redirection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Admin Username	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Admin Password	<input type="text" value="bb8116d866d0"/> <input type="button" value="Generate"/>

Web Administration Settings	
<b>Enable</b>	Check the box to allow Peplink Balance to manage the web admin access information of the AP.
<b>Web Access Protocol</b>	These buttons specify the web access protocol used for accessing the web admin of the AP. The two available options are <b>HTTP</b> and <b>HTTPS</b> .
<b>Management Port</b>	This field specifies the management port used for accessing the device.
<b>HTTP to HTTPS Redirection</b>	This option will be available if you have chosen <b>HTTPS</b> as the <b>Web Access Protocol</b> . With this enabled, any HTTP access to the web admin will redirect to HTTPS automatically.
<b>Admin User Name</b>	This field specifies the administrator username of the web admin. It is set as <i>admin</i> by default.
<b>Admin Password</b>	This field allows you to specify a new administrator password. You may also click the <b>Generate</b> button and let the system generate a random password automatically.

AP Time Settings	
Time Zone	<input type="radio"/> Follow controller time zone selection <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="(GMT-08:00) Pacific Time (US &amp; Canada)"/>
Time Server	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Follow controller NTP server selection <input type="radio"/> <input type="text"/>

AP Time Settings	
<b>Time Zone</b>	Check the box to allow the Peplink Balance to manage the web admin access information of the AP.
<b>Time Server</b>	These buttons specify the web access protocol used for accessing the web admin of the AP. The two available options are <b>HTTP</b> and <b>HTTPS</b> .

AP Controller Settings	
Client Load Balancing	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Coverage Redundancy	High

AP Controller Settings	
<b>Client Load Balancing</b>	Check the box to turn on client load balancing.
<b>Coverage Redundancy</b>	Select the degree of coverage redundancy to use. Available values are <b>Low</b> , <b>Medium</b> , and <b>High</b> .

### 23.4 Info

A comprehensive overview of your AP can be accessed by navigating to **AP>Info**.



AP Controller	
<b>License Limit</b>	This field displays the maximum number of AP your Balance router can control. You can purchase licenses to increase the number of AP you can manage.
<b>Frequency</b>	Underneath, there are two check boxes labeled <b>2.4 Ghz</b> and <b>5 Ghz</b> . Clicking either box will toggle the display of information for that frequency. By default, the graphs display the number of clients and data usage for both 2.4GHz and 5 GHz frequencies.
<b>SSID</b>	The colored boxes indicate the SSID to display information for. Clicking any colored box will toggle the display of information for that SSID. By default, all the graphs show information for all SSIDs.

<b>No. of APs</b>	This pie chart and table indicates how many APs are online and how many are offline.
<b>No. of Clients</b>	This graph displays the number of clients connected to each network at any given time. Mouse over any line on the graph to see how many clients connected to a specific SSID for that point in time.
<b>Data Usage</b>	This graph enables you to see the data usage of any SSID for any given time period. Mouse over any line on the graph to see the data usage by each SSID for that point in time. Use the buttons next to <b>Zoom</b> to select the time scale you wish to view. In addition, you could use the sliders at the bottom to further refine your timescale.

Events		<a href="#">View Alerts</a>
Jan 2 11:01:11	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:42	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:38	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:36	AP One 300M: Client 00:21:6A:35:59:A4 associated with Balance_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:20	AP One 300M: Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 11:00:09	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:59:09	AP One 300M: Client 00:21:6A:35:59:A4 disassociated from Balance_11a	
Jan 2 10:59:08	Office Fiber AP: Client 18:00:2D:3D:4E:7F associated with Balance	
Jan 2 10:58:53	Michael's Desk: Client 18:00:2D:3D:4E:7F disassociated from Wireless	
Jan 2 10:58:18	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:58:03	Office InWall: Client 10:BF:48:E9:76:C7 associated with Wireless	
Jan 2 10:57:47	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:57:19	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:57:09	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:48	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:39	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:19	AP One 300M: Client 00:26:BB:05:84:A4 associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:56:09	AP One 300M: Client 9C:04:EB:10:39:4C associated with Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:55:42	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 disassociated from Marketing_11a	
Jan 2 10:55:29	AP One 300M: Client 54:EA:A8:2D:A0:D5 associated with Marketing_11a	
<a href="#">More...</a>		

**Events**

This event log displays all activity on your AP network, down to the client level. Click **View Alerts** to see only alerts, and click the **More...** link for additional records.

### 23.5 Usage

A detailed breakdown of data usage for each AP is available at **AP>Status**. The information is organized by device groups as defined in **Section 22.3**.

Search Filter	
AP Name / Serial Number	<input type="text"/>
Online Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Include Offline APs
Search Result	

Managed APs							<a href="#">Expand</a>	<a href="#">Collapse</a>
Group Name	AP Name / Serial Number	Online	Channel	Clients (2.4 / 5 GHz)	Sent (kbps)	Received (kbps)		
▶ Default		0		0 0	0.00	0.00		

## Usage

**AP Name/Serial Number** This field enables you to quickly find your device if you know its name or serial number. Fill in the field to begin searching. Partial names and serial numbers are supported.

**Online Status** This button toggles whether your search will include offline devices.

This table shows the detailed information on each AP, including channel, number of clients, upload traffic, and download traffic. Click the blue arrows at the left of the table to expand and collapse information on each device group. You could also expand and collapse all groups by using the   buttons.

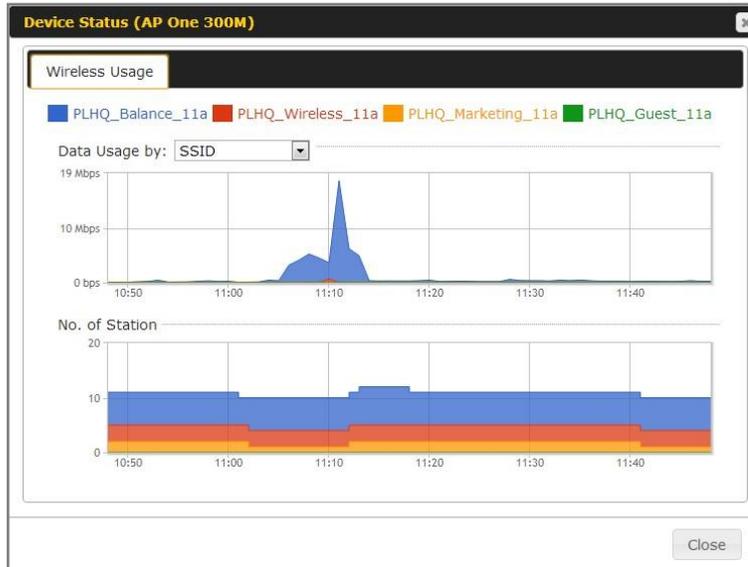
On the right of the table, you will see the following icons:   .

Click the  icon to see a usage table for each client:

MAC Address	IP Address	Type	Signal	SSID	Upload	Download
80:56:f2:98:75:ff	10.9.2.7	802.11ng	Excellent (37)	Balance	66.26 MB	36.26 MB
c4:6a:b7:bf:d7:15	10.9.2.123	802.11ng	Excellent (42)	Balance	6.65 MB	2.26 MB
70:56:81:1d:87:f3	10.9.2.102	802.11ng	Good (23)	Balance	1.86 MB	606.63 KB
e0:63:e5:83:45:c8	10.9.2.101	802.11ng	Excellent (39)	Balance	3.42 MB	474.52 KB
18:00:2d:3d:4e:7f	10.9.2.66	802.11ng	Excellent (25)	Balance	640.29 KB	443.57 KB
14:5a:05:80:4f:40	10.9.2.76	802.11ng	Excellent (29)	Balance	2.24 KB	3.67 KB
00:1a:dd:c5:4e:24	10.8.9.84	802.11ng	Excellent (29)	Wireless	9.86 MB	9.76 MB
00:1a:dd:bb:29:ec	10.8.9.73	802.11ng	Excellent (25)	Wireless	9.36 MB	11.14 MB
40:b0:fa:c3:26:2c	10.8.9.18	802.11ng	Good (23)	Wireless	118.05 MB	7.92 MB
e4:25:e7:8a:d3:12	10.10.11.23	802.11ng	Excellent (35)	Marketing	74.78 MB	4.58 MB
04:f7:e4:ef:68:05	10.10.11.71	802.11ng	Poor (12)	Marketing	84.84 KB	119.32 KB

## Managed Wireless Devices

Click the  icon to see a graph displaying usage:



Click any point in the graphs to display detailed usage and client information for that device, using that SSID, at that point in time. On the **Data Usage by** menu, you can display the information by SSID or by AP send/receive rate.

Click the  icon to view a detailed event log for that particular device:

**Event Information** ✕

**Events**

Jan 2 11:53:39	Client 00:26:BB:08:AC:FD associated with Wireless_11a
Jan 2 11:39:31	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 11:16:55	Client A8:BB:CF:E1:0F:1E disassociated from Balance_11a
Jan 2 11:11:54	Client A8:BB:CF:E1:0F:1E associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 11:10:45	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C associated with Marketing_11a
Jan 2 11:00:36	Client 00:21:6A:35:59:A4 associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 11:00:20	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 10:59:09	Client 00:21:6A:35:59:A4 disassociated from Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:42:28	Client F4:B7:E2:16:35:E9 associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:29:12	Client 84:7A:88:78:1E:4B associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:24:27	Client 90:B9:31:0D:11:EC disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 10:24:27	Client 90:B9:31:0D:11:EC roamed to Marketing_11a at 2830-BFC8-D230
Jan 2 10:13:22	Client E8:8D:28:A8:43:93 associated with Balance_11a
Jan 2 10:13:22	Client E8:8D:28:A8:43:93 roamed to Balance_11a from 2830-BF7F-694C
Jan 2 10:07:52	Client CC:3A:61:89:07:F3 associated with Wireless_11a
Jan 2 10:04:35	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C associated with Marketing_11a
Jan 2 10:03:38	Client 60:67:20:24:B6:4C disassociated from Marketing_11a
Jan 2 09:58:27	Client 00:26:BB:08:AC:FD disassociated from Wireless_11a
Jan 2 09:52:46	Client 00:26:BB:08:AC:FD associated with Wireless_11a
Jan 2 09:20:26	Client 8C:3A:E3:3F:17:62 associated with Balance_11a

[More...](#)

[Close](#)

## 23.6 AP Status

A detailed breakdown of the status of each device is available at **AP>Status**. The information is organized by device groups as defined in **Section 22.3**.

**Search Filter**

AP Name / Serial Number	<input type="text"/>
Online Status	<input type="checkbox"/> Include Offline APs
Search Result	

**Managed APs** Expand Collapse

Group Name (Online APs Count)	AP Name / SN	MAC Address	Location	IP Address	Firmware	Pack ID	Configurations
▼	Default (0 online)						

[Remove Offline Units](#)
[Set Firmware Pack](#) [Change AP Profile](#)

## AP Status

**AP Name/Serial Number** This field enables you to quickly find your device if you know its name or serial number. Fill in the field to begin searching. Partial names and serial numbers are supported.

**Online Status** This button toggles whether your search will include offline devices.

This table displays the MAC address, IP address, firmware version, and specific configurations of each device. Clicking the **Details** button for each device will display the following menu:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Access Point Details" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains a table with the following fields:

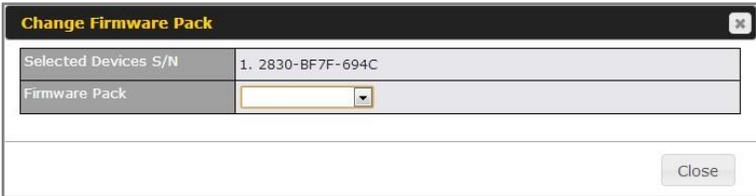
Device Details	
Serial Number	2830-82A7-89C7
MAC Address	00:1A:DD:B9:17:E0
Name	<input type="text" value="Michael's Desk"/>
Location	<input type="text" value="Michael"/>
Channel	2.4 GHz: <input type="text" value="1"/>
AP Profile	Default

Close

Here, you can edit the name and location of your AP. You can also choose the channel to transmit from.

You can also batch configure devices on this table by selecting the items you wish to configure, then clicking **Set Firmware Pack** **Change AP Profile**.

**Managed APs** After selecting your devices you wish to configure, click **Set Firmware Pack** to reach the following menu:



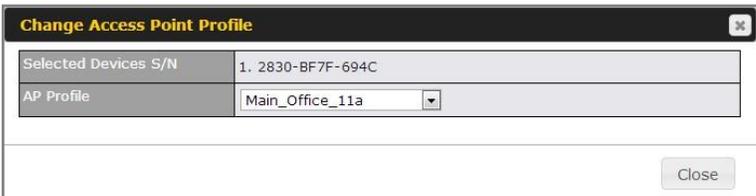
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Change Firmware Pack" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following fields:

Selected Devices S/N	1. 2830-BF7F-694C
Firmware Pack	<input type="text"/>

Close

Select the pull-down menu to choose a firmware pack for the devices that you have selected.

After selecting your devices you wish to configure, click **Change AP Profile** to reach the following menu:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Change Access Point Profile" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following fields:

Selected Devices S/N	1. 2830-BF7F-694C
AP Profile	<input type="text" value="Main_Office_11a"/>

Close

Select the pull-down menu to choose an AP profile for the devices that you have selected.

### 23.7 Rogue AP

A listing of suspected rogue devices can be accessed by navigating to **AP>Rogue AP**.

Suspected Rogue Devices						
BSSID	SSID	Channel	Encryption	Last Seen	Mark as	
00:1A:DD:B8:78:C1	Balance	5	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:1A:DD:B8:78:C2	Wireless	5	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:1A:DD:B8:78:C3	Marketing	5	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:1A:DD:B8:78:C4	Guest	5	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:03:7F:00:00:00	T4B1	5	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:03:7F:00:00:02		5	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:18:39:CC:8B:FE	PDF	11	WPA	3 hours ago		
00:1A:1E:F3:0E:40	Aruba3200	6	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:1A:1E:F3:0E:41		6	OPEN	1 minute ago		
00:1A:1E:F3:0E:48	Aruba3200	40	WPA2	2 minutes ago		
00:1A:1E:F3:0E:49		40	OPEN	2 minutes ago		
00:1A:DD:00:28:11	PEPWAVE_2800	149	OPEN	7 hours ago		
00:1A:DD:9F:AA:45	OTGH	11	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:1A:DD:AD:C7:A1	test	1	OPEN	14 minutes ago		
00:1A:DD:AD:C7:B1	test	161	OPEN	2 minutes ago		
00:1A:DD:B8:87:05	BM_LB	36	WPA2	2 minutes ago		
00:1A:DD:B9:1A:65	test	1	OPEN	3 hours ago		
00:1A:DD:B9:1C:05	pep test	9	WPA2	46 minutes ago		
00:1A:DD:B9:5D:88	PEPWAVE_F8F5	1	WPA2	1 minute ago		
00:1A:DD:B9:60:88	KNMAX700	3	WPA2	1 minute ago		

Prev 1-20 (204) Next

Identified Known/Rogue Devices						
	BSSID	SSID	Channel	Encryption	Last Seen	Unmark
	00:03:7F:00:00:01	!T4B1	5	WPA2	1 minute ago	
	00:1A:DD:B6:A3:21	S_Room	1	WPA2	1 minute ago	

Prev 1-2 (2) Next

**Suspected Rogue Devices**

Hovering over the device MAC address will result in a popup with information on how this device was detected. Click the icons and the device will be moved to the bottom table of identified devices.

### 23.8 Toolbox

Additional tools for managing firmware packs, power adjustment, and channel assignment can be found at **AP>Toolbox**.

Firmware Packs
Auto Power Adj.
Dynamic Channel Assignment

Pack ID	Release Date	Details	Action
1126	2013-08-26		

Check for Updates
Manual Upload
Default... No default defined.

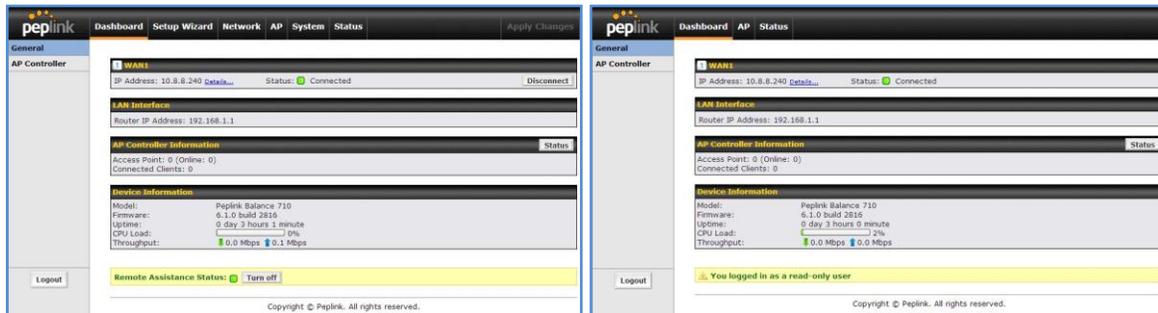
**Firmware Packs**

This is the first menu that will appear. Here, you can manage the firmware of your AP. Clicking on will display information regarding each firmware pack. To receive new firmware packs, you can either press Check for Updates to download new packs or you can press Manual Upload to manually upload a firmware pack. Press Default... to define which firmware pack is default.

## 24 System Settings

### 24.1 Admin Security

There are two types of user accounts available for accessing the web admin: *admin* and *user*. They represent two user levels: the admin level has full administration access, while the user level is read-only. The user level can access only the device's status information; users cannot make any changes on the device.



Admin account  
UI

User account  
UI

A web login session will be logged out automatically when it has been idle longer than the **Web Session Timeout**. Before the session expires, you may click the **Logout** button in the web admin to exit the session.

**0 hours 0 minutes** signifies an unlimited session time. This setting should be used only in special situations, as it will lower the system security level if users do not logout before closing the browser.

**Default:** 4 hours 0 minutes.

For security reasons, after logging in to the web admin Interface for the first time, it is recommended to change the administrator password. Configuring the administration interface to be accessible only from the LAN can further improve system security. Administrative settings configuration is located at **System > Admin Security**.

Admin Settings <span style="float: right;">?</span>	
Router Name	Balance_09DC <span style="float: right;">hostname: balance-09dc</span>
Admin User Name	admin
Admin Password	*****
Confirm Admin Password	*****
Read-only User Name	user
User Password	
Confirm User Password	
Front Panel Passcode	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Session Timeout	<span>?</span> 4 Hours 0 Minutes
Authentication by RADIUS	<span>?</span> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
Auth Protocol	MS-CHAP v2
Auth Server	<input type="text"/> Port <input type="text"/> <span>Default</span>
Auth Server Secret	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters
Auth Timeout	3 seconds
Accounting Server	<input type="text"/> Port <input type="text"/> <span>Default</span>
Accounting Server Secret	<input type="text"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hide Characters
Network Connection	LAN
Restricted Admin Access	<input type="checkbox"/> by Management Port Only
CLI SSH & Console	<span>?</span> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
CLI SSH Port	8822 <span>Default</span>
CLI SSH Access	LAN/WAN
Security	HTTP
Web Admin Port	80 <span>Default</span>
Web Admin Access	LAN Only

Admin Settings	
<b>Router Name</b>	This field allows you to define a name for this Peplink Balance unit. By default, <b>Router Name</b> is set as <b>Balance_XXXX</b> , where XXXX refers to the last 4 digits of the serial number of that balance unit.
<b>Admin User Name</b>	<b>Admin User Name</b> is set as <b>admin</b> by default, but can be changed, if desired.
<b>Admin Password</b>	This field allows you to specify a new administrator password.
<b>Confirm Admin Password</b>	This field allows you to verify and confirm the new administrator password.
<b>Read-only User Name</b>	Read-only User Name is set as <b>user</b> by default, but can be changed, if desired.
<b>User Password</b>	This field allows you to specify a new user password. Once the user password is set, the

	read-only user feature will be enabled.
<b>Confirm User Password</b>	This field allows you to verify and confirm the new user password.
<b>Front Panel Passcode</b>	To require a 4-digit passcode to access front panel controls, check this box and then select the code from the drop-down menus.
<b>Web Session Timeout</b>	This field specifies the number of hours and minutes that a web session can remain idle before the Balance terminates its access to the web admin interface. By default, it is set to <b>4 hours</b> .
<b>Authentication by RADIUS</b>	With this box is checked, the web admin will authenticate using an external RADIUS server. Authenticated users are treated as either "admin" with full read-write permission or "user" with read-only access. Local admin and user accounts will be disabled. When the device is not able to communicate with the external RADIUS server, local accounts will be enabled again for emergency access. Additional authentication options will be available once this box is checked.
<b>Auth Protocol</b>	This specifies the authentication protocol used. Available options are <b>MS-CHAP v2</b> and <b>PAP</b> .
<b>Auth Server</b>	This specifies the access address and port of the external RADIUS server.
<b>Auth Server Secret</b>	This field is for entering the secret key for accessing the RADIUS server.
<b>Auth Timeout</b>	This option specifies the time value for authentication timeout.
<b>Accounting Server</b>	This specifies the access address and port of the external accounting server.
<b>Accounting Server Secret</b>	This field is for entering the secret key for accessing the accounting server.
<b>Network Connection</b>	This option is for specifying the network connection to be used for authentication. Users can choose from LAN, WAN, and VPN connections.
<b>Restricted Admin Access</b>	Check this box to restrict management to administrators connected to the management port.
<b>CLI SSH &amp; Console</b>	The CLI (command line interface) can be accessed via SSH. It can also be accessed from the serial console port on Peplink Balance 305, 380, 580, 710, 1350 and 2500 units. This field enables CLI support. For additional information regarding CLI, please refer to <b>Section 22.5</b> .
<b>CLI SSH Port</b>	This field determines the port on which clients can access CLI SSH.
<b>CLI SSH Access</b>	This menu allows you to choose between granting access to LAN and WAN clients, or to LAN clients only.
<b>Security</b>	This option is for specifying the protocol(s) through which the web admin interface can be

	<p>accessed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HTTP</li> <li>• HTTPS</li> <li>• HTTP/HTTPS</li> </ul>
<b>Web Admin Port</b>	This field is for specifying the port number on which the web admin interface can be accessed.
<b>Web Admin Access</b>	<p>This option is for specifying the network interfaces through which the web admin interface can be accessed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LAN only</li> <li>• LAN/WAN</li> </ul> <p>If LAN/WAN is chosen, the <b>WAN Connection Access Settings</b> form will be displayed.</p>



### WAN Connection Access Settings

This field allows you to restrict access to the web admin to only defined IP subnets.

- **Any** - Allow web admin accesses from anywhere, without IP address restrictions.
- **Allow access from the following IP subnets only** - Restricts the ability to access web admin to only defined IP subnets. When this option is chosen, a text input area will appear:

**Allowed Source IP Subnets**



Enter your allowed IP subnet addresses into this text area. Each IP subnet must be in the form of *w.x.y.z/m*. *w.x.y.z* represents an IP address (e.g., *192.168.0.0*), and *m* represents the subnet mask in CIDR format, which is between 0 and 32 inclusively. For example: *192.168.0.0/24*.

To define multiple subnets, separate each IP subnet, one per line. For example:

```
192.168.0.0/24
10.8.0.0/16
```

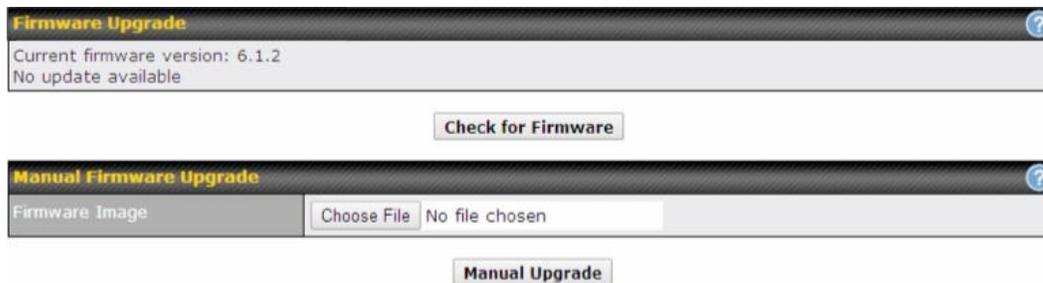
This is to choose which WAN IP address(es) the web server should listen on.

**Allowed WAN IP Address(es)**

Connection / IP Address(es)		All	Clear
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.65 (Interface IP)		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.77 (Interface IP)		
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3			

## 24.2 Firmware

The firmware of Peplink Balance is upgradeable through the web admin interface. Firmware upgrade functionality is located at **System>Firmware**.



There are two ways to upgrade the unit. The first method is through an online download. The second method is to upload a firmware file manually.

To perform an online download, click on the **Check for Firmware** button. The Peplink Balance will check online for new firmware. If new firmware is available, the Peplink Balance will automatically download the firmware. The rest of the upgrade process will be automatically initiated.

You may also download a firmware image from the [Peplink website](#) and update the unit manually. To update using a firmware image, click **Choose File** to select the firmware file from the local computer, and then click **Manual Upgrade** to send the firmware to the Peplink Balance. It will then automatically initiate the firmware upgrade process.

Please note that all Peplink devices can store two different firmware versions in two different partitions. A firmware upgrade will always replace the inactive partition. If you want to keep the inactive firmware, you can simply reboot your device with the inactive firmware and then perform the firmware upgrade.

### Firmware Upgrade Status for Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, 50, 210, and 310

Status LED Information during firmware upgrade:

- OFF – Firmware upgrade in progress (DO NOT disconnect power.)
- **Red** – Unit is rebooting
- **Green** – Firmware upgrade successfully completed

### Important Note

The firmware upgrade process may not necessarily preserve the previous configuration, and the behavior varies on a case-by-case basis. Consult the release notes for the particular firmware version before installing. Do not disconnect the power during firmware upgrade process. Do not attempt to upload a non-firmware file or a firmware file that is not supported by Peplink. Upgrading the Peplink Balance with an invalid firmware file will damage the unit and may void the warranty.

### 24.3 Time

The time server functionality enables the system clock of the Peplink Balance to be synchronized with a specified time server. The settings for time server configuration are located at **System>Time**.

Time Settings	
Time Zone	(GMT+07:00) Krasnoyarsk <input type="checkbox"/> Show all
Time Server	0.peplink.pool.ntp.org <input type="button" value="Default"/>

Time Settings	
<b>Time Zone</b>	This specifies the time zone (along with the corresponding Daylight Savings Time scheme) in which Peplink Balance operates. The <b>Time Zone</b> value affects the time stamps in the event log of the Peplink Balance and e-mail notifications. Check <b>Show all</b> to show all time zone options.
<b>Time Server</b>	This setting specifies the NTP network time server to be utilized by the Peplink Balance.

## 24.4 Email Notification

The email notification functionality of the Peplink Balance provides a system administrator with up-to-date information on network status. The settings for configuring email notification are found at **System>Email Notification**.

Email Notification Setup	
Email Notification	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable
SMTP Server	smtp.mycompany.com <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Require authentication
SSL Encryption	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Note: any server certificate will be accepted)
SMTP Port	465 <input type="button" value="Default"/>
SMTP User Name	smtpuser
SMTP Password	*****
Confirm SMTP Password	*****
Sender's Email Address	admin@mycompany.com
Recipient's Email Address	system@mycompany.com staff@mycompany.com

Email Notification Settings	
<b>Email Notification</b>	This setting specifies whether or not to enable email notification. If <b>Enable</b> is checked, the Peplink Balance will send email messages to system administrators when the WAN status changes or when new firmware is available. If <b>Enable</b> is not checked, email notification is disabled and the Peplink Balance will not send email messages.
<b>SMTP Server</b>	This setting specifies the SMTP server to be used for sending email. If the server requires authentication, check <b>Require authentication</b> .
<b>SSL Encryption</b>	Check the box to enable SMTPS. When the box is checked, <b>SMTP Port</b> will be changed to <b>465</b> automatically.
<b>SMTP Port</b>	This field is for specifying the SMTP port number. By default, this is set to <b>25</b> ; when <b>SSL Encryption</b> is checked, the default port number will be set to <b>465</b> . You may customize the port number by editing this field. Click <b>Default</b> to restore the number to its default setting.
<b>SMTP User Name / Password</b>	This setting specifies the SMTP username and password while sending email. These options are shown only if <b>Require authentication</b> is checked in the <b>SMTP Server</b> setting.
<b>Confirm SMTP Password</b>	This field allows you to verify and confirm the new administrator password.
<b>Sender's Email Address</b>	This setting specifies the email address which the Peplink Balance will use to send its reports.
<b>Recipient's</b>	This setting specifies the email address(es) to which the Peplink Balance will send email

**Email Address** notifications. For multiple recipients, separate each email using the enter key.

After you have finished setting up email notifications, you can click the **Test Email Notification** button to test the settings before saving. After **Test Email Notification** is clicked, you will see this screen to confirm the settings:

Test Email Notification	
SMTP Server	smtp.mycompany.com
SMTP Port	465
SMTP UserName	smtpuser
Sender's Email Address	admin@mycompany.com
Recipient's Email Address	system@mycompany.com staff@mycompany.com

Click **Send Test Notification** to confirm. In a few seconds, you will see a message with detailed test results.

**Test email sent. Email notification settings are not saved, it will be saved after clicked the 'Save' button.**

### Test Result

```
[INFO] Try email through connection #3
[<-] 220 ESMTP
[->] EHLO balance
[<-] 250-smtp Hello balance [210.210.210.210]
250-SIZE 100000000
250-8BITMIME
250-PIPELINING
250-AUTH PLAIN LOGIN
250-STARTTLS
```

## 24.5 Event Log

Event log functionality enables event logging at a specified remote syslog server. The settings for configuring the remote system log can be found at **System>Event Log**.

Send Events to Remote Syslog Server	
Remote Syslog	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Remote Syslog Host	<input type="text"/>

Push Events to Mobile Devices	
Push Events	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Remote Syslog Settings	
<b>Remote Syslog</b>	This setting specifies whether or not to log events at the specified remote syslog server.
<b>Remote Syslog Host</b>	This setting specifies the IP address or hostname of the remote syslog server.
The Peplink Balance can also send push notifications to mobile devices that have our Mobile Router Utility installed. Check the box to activate this feature.	
<b>Push Events</b>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"><p>For more information on the Router Utility, go to: <a href="http://www.peplink.com/products/router-utility">www.peplink.com/products/router-utility</a></p></div>

## 24.6 SNMP

SNMP or simple network management protocol is an open standard that can be used to collect information about the Peplink Balance unit. SNMP configuration is located at **System>SNMP**.

SNMP Settings			
SNMP Device Name	Balance_09DC		
SNMP Port	161	Default	
SNMPv1	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
SNMPv2c	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
SNMPv3	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable		
Save			

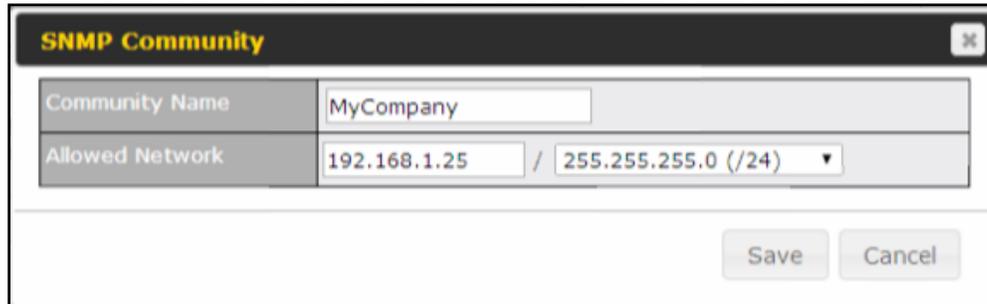
Community Name	Allowed Source Network	Access Mode	
MyCompany	192.168.1.20/24	Read Only	✖
Add SNMP Community			

SNMPv3 User Name	Authentication / Privacy	Access Mode	
SNMPUser	SHA / DES	Read Only	✖
Add SNMP User			

SNMP Settings	
<b>SNMP Device Name</b>	This field shows the router name defined at <b>System&gt;Admin Security</b> .
<b>SNMP Port</b>	This option specifies the port which SNMP will use. The default port is <b>161</b> .
<b>SNMPv1</b>	This option allows you to enable SNMP version 1.
<b>SNMPv2</b>	This option allows you to enable SNMP version 2.
<b>SNMPv3</b>	This option allows you to enable SNMP version 3.

To add a community for either SNMPv1 or SNMPv2, click the **Add SNMP Community** button in the **Community Name** table, upon which the following screen is displayed:



The dialog box titled "SNMP Community" contains two input fields: "Community Name" with the value "MyCompany" and "Allowed Network" with the value "192.168.1.25 / 255.255.255.0 (/24)". There are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

SNMP Community Settings	
<b>Community Name</b>	This setting specifies the SNMP community name.
<b>Allowed Source Subnet Address</b>	This setting specifies a subnet from which access to the SNMP server is allowed. Enter subnet address here (e.g., 192.168.1.0) and select the appropriate subnet mask.

To define a user name for SNMPv3, click **Add SNMP User** in the **SNMPv3 User Name** table, upon which the following screen is displayed:



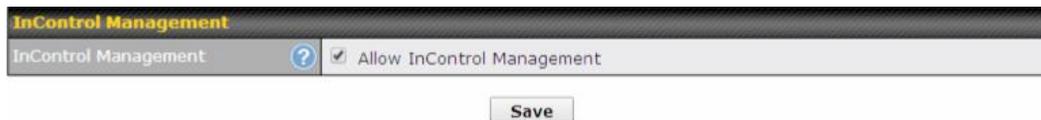
The dialog box titled "SNMPv3 User" contains three input fields: "User Name" with the value "SNMPUser", "Authentication" with a dropdown menu set to "SHA" and a password field containing "password", and "Privacy" with a dropdown menu set to "DES" and a privacy password field containing "privacypassword". There are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

SNMPv3 User Settings	
<b>User Name</b>	This setting specifies a user name to be used in SNMPv3.
<b>Authentication Protocol</b>	<p>This setting specifies via a drop-down menu one of the following valid authentication protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NONE</li> <li>• MD5</li> <li>• SHA</li> </ul> <p>When MD5 or SHA is selected, an entry field will appear for the password.</p>
<b>Privacy Protocol</b>	This setting specifies via a drop-down menu one of the following valid privacy protocols:

- NONE
- DES

When DES is selected, an entry field will appear for the password.

## 24.7 InControl



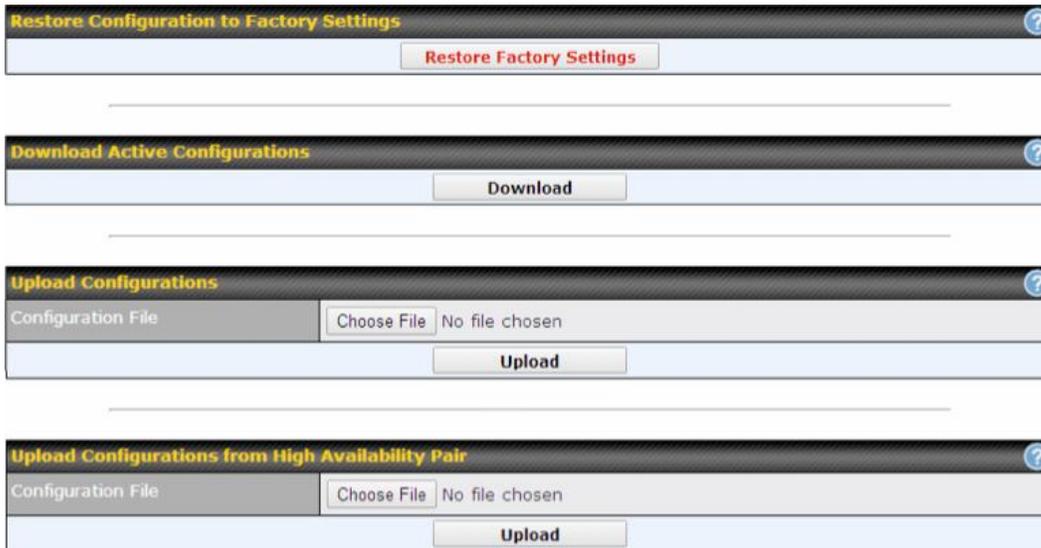
InControl is a cloud-based service which allows you to manage all of your Peplink and Pepwave devices with one unified system. With it, you can generate reports, gather statistics, and configure your devices automatically. All of this is now possible with InControl.

When this check box is checked, the device's status information will be sent to the Peplink InControl system. This device's usage data and configuration will be sent to the system if you enable the features in the system.

You can sign up for an InControl account at <https://incontrol2.peplink.com/>. You can register your devices under the account, monitor their status, see their usage reports, and receive offline notifications.

## 24.8 Configuration

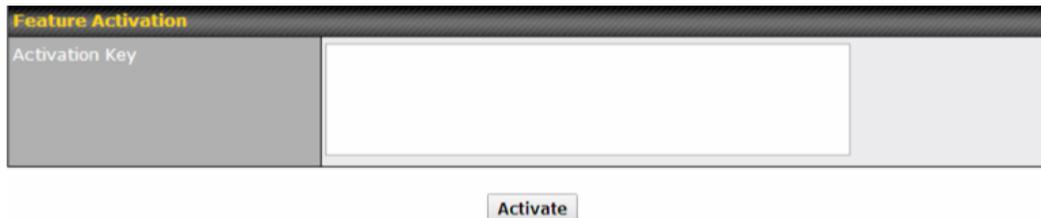
Backing up Peplink Balance settings immediately after successful completion of initial setup is strongly recommended. The functionality to download and upload Peplink Balance settings is found at **System>Configuration**.



Configuration	
<b>Restore Configuration to Factory Settings</b>	The <b>Restore Factory Settings</b> button is to reset the configuration to factory default settings. After clicking the button, you will need to click the <b>Apply Changes</b> button on the top right corner to make the settings effective.
<b>Download Active Configurations</b>	Click <b>Download</b> to backup the current active settings.
<b>Upload Configurations</b>	To restore or change settings based on a configuration file, click <b>Choose File</b> to locate the configuration file on the local computer, and then click <b>Upload</b> . The new settings can then be applied by clicking the <b>Apply Changes</b> button on the page header, or you can cancel the procedure by pressing <b>discard</b> on the main page of the web admin Interface.
<b>Upload Configurations from High Availability Pair</b>	In a high availability (HA) configuration, the Balance unit can quickly load the configuration of its HA counterpart. To do so, click the <b>Upload</b> button. After loading the settings, configure the LAN IP address of the Peplink Balance unit so that it is different from the HA counterpart.

## 24.9 Feature Add-ons

Some balance models have features that can be activated upon purchase. Once the purchase is complete, you will receive an activation key. Enter the key in the **Activation Key** field, click **Activate**, and then click **Apply Changes**.



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Feature Activation". It contains a label "Activation Key" on the left, a large empty text input field in the center, and a button labeled "Activate" centered below the input field.

## 24.10 Reboot

This page provides a reboot button for restarting the system. For maximum reliability, the Peplink Balance series can be equipped with two copies of firmware, and each copy can be a different version. You can select the firmware version you would like to reboot the device with. The firmware marked with **(Running)** is the current system boot up firmware.

**Please note that a firmware upgrade will always replace the inactive firmware partition.**

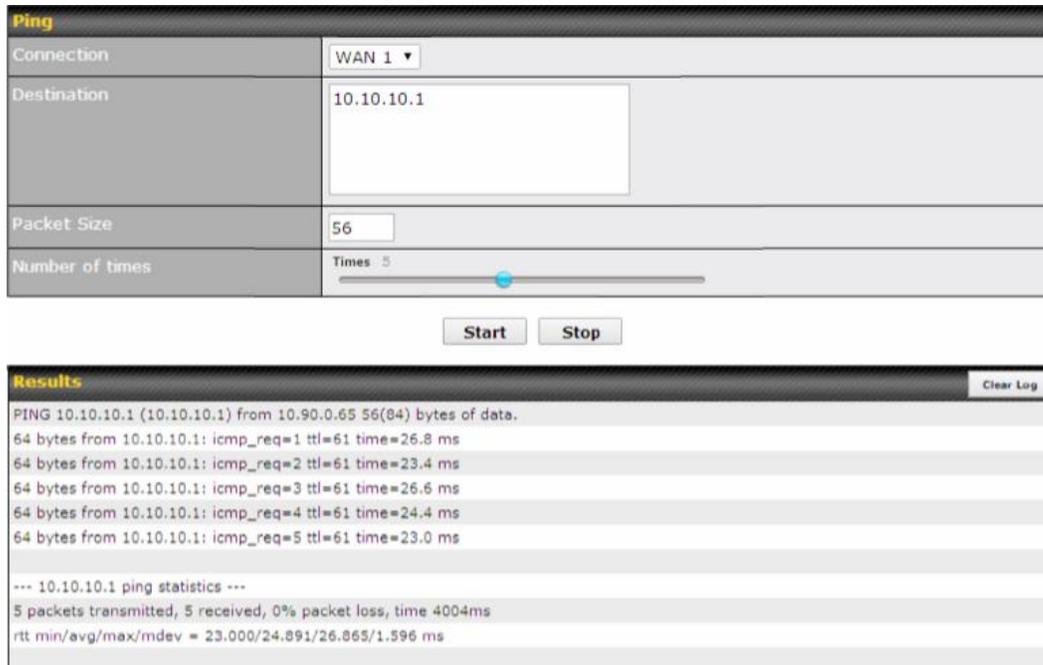


The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Reboot System" with a help icon in the top right corner. Below the title, it says "Select the firmware you want to use to start up this device:". There are two radio button options: "Firmware 1: 6.1.2b01 build 1154" (unselected) and "Firmware 2: 6.1.2 build 1159 (Running)" (selected). A "Reboot" button is located at the bottom center of the form.

## 25 Tools

### 25.1 Ping

The ping test tool sends pings through a specified Ethernet interface or a SpeedFusion™ VPN connection. You can specify the number of pings in the field **Number of times** to a maximum number of 10 times. **Packet Size** can be set to a maximum of 1472 bytes. The ping utility is located at **System>Tools>Ping**, illustrated below:



The screenshot shows the 'Ping' utility interface. It has a title bar 'Ping' and a 'Clear Log' button. The configuration section includes: 'Connection' set to 'WAN 1', 'Destination' set to '10.10.10.1', 'Packet Size' set to '56', and 'Number of times' set to 'Times 5' with a slider. Below are 'Start' and 'Stop' buttons. The 'Results' section shows the following output:

```
PING 10.10.10.1 (10.10.10.1) from 10.90.0.65 56(84) bytes of data:
64 bytes from 10.10.10.1: icmp_req=1 ttl=61 time=26.8 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.1: icmp_req=2 ttl=61 time=23.4 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.1: icmp_req=3 ttl=61 time=26.6 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.1: icmp_req=4 ttl=61 time=24.4 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.1: icmp_req=5 ttl=61 time=23.0 ms

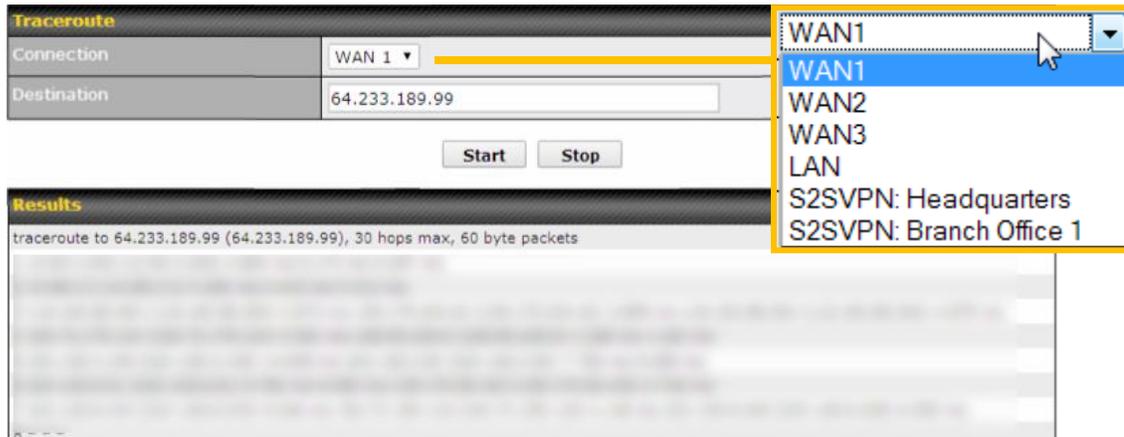
--- 10.10.10.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 4004ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 23.000/24.891/26.865/1.596 ms
```

#### Tip

A system administrator can use the ping utility to manually check the connectivity of a particular LAN/WAN connection.

## 25.2 Traceroute Test

The traceroute test tool traces the routing path to the destination through a particular Ethernet interface or a SpeedFusion™ connection. The traceroute test utility is located at **System>Tools>Traceroute**.



### Tip

A system administrator can use the traceroute utility to analyze the connection path of a LAN/WAN connection.

## 25.3 PepVPN Test

The PepVPN test tool can help to test the throughput between different VPN peers. You can define the **Test Type**, **Direction**, and **Duration** of the test, and press **Go!** to perform the throughput test. The VPN test utility is located at **System>Tools>PepVPN Test**, illustrated below:

PepVPN Throughput Test	
Profile	NY Office ▾
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP
Direction	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Upload <input type="radio"/> Download
Duration	10 seconds (5 - 600)
<input type="button" value="Go!"/>	
Results	
(Empty)	

## 25.4 PepVPN Analyzer

The bandwidthbonding feature of PepVPN occurs when multiple WAN lines from one end merge with multiple WAN lines from the other end. For this to happen, each WAN line needs to form a connection with all the WAN lines on the opposite end. The function of the PepVPN analyzer is to report the throughput, packet loss, and latency of all possible combinations of connections. This feature is located at **System>PepVPN Analyzer**. To use this feature, simply choose your profile from the drop-down menu and click **Go!**

**PepVPN Analyzer**

Profile:

---

**Results**

Profile: US Office  
Estimated time: 36s  
Time remaining: 0s

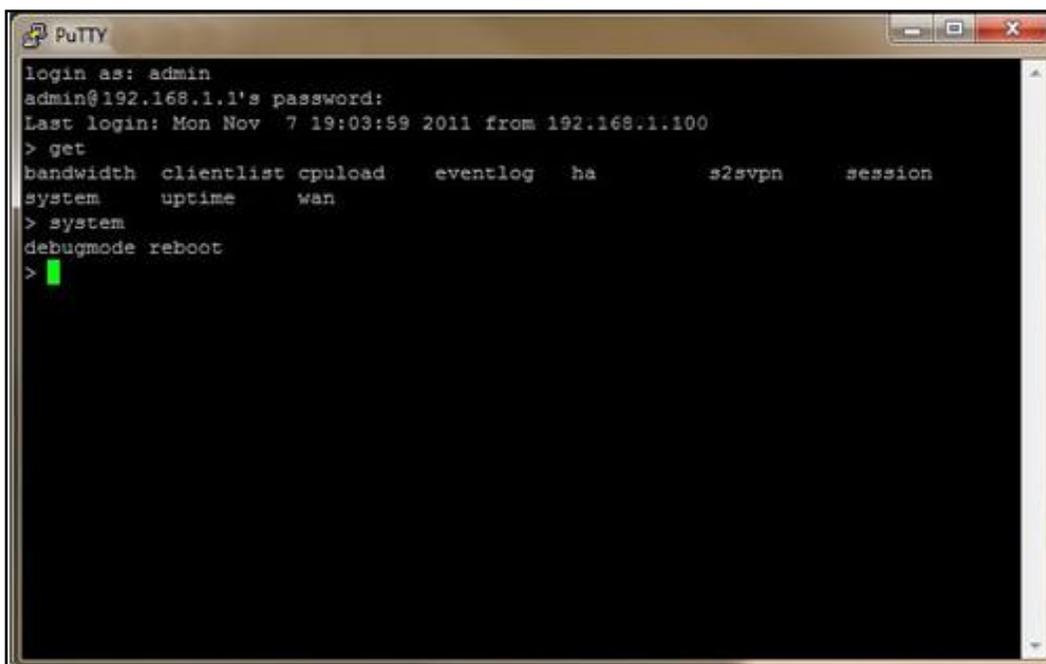
100%

Local WAN 3	Remote WAN 1	Remote WAN 2	Throughput (Mbps) ‡	Packet loss (%) ‡	RTT (ms) ‡
o		o	7.69	0.00	243.75
o	o		6.70	0.01	245.25
o	o	o	7.24	0.07	236.40

## 25.5 CLI (Command Line Interface Support)

The serial console connector with the Peplink Balance 305, 380 HW rev 5, Peplink Balance 580, Peplink Balance 710 HW rev 2, Peplink Balance 1350, Peplink Balance 2500, and MediaFast 200 and 500 is RJ-45. To access the serial console port, prepare a RJ-45 to DB-9 console cable. Connect the RJ-45 end to the unit's console port and the DB-9 end to a terminal's serial port. The port setting will be *115200,8N1*.

The serial console connector with the Peplink Balance 305, 380 HW rev 1 to 4, Peplink Balance 710 HW rev 1 is DB-9 male connector. To access the serial console port, connect a null modem cable with a DB-9 connector on both ends to a terminal with the port setting of *115200,8N1*.



```
login as: admin
admin@192.168.1.1's password:
Last login: Mon Nov  7 19:03:59 2011 from 192.168.1.100
> get
bandwidth  clientlist  cpuload    eventlog   ha          s2svpn     session
system    uptime    wan
> system
debugmode reboot
>
```

## 26 Status

### 26.1 Device

System information is located at **Status>Device**.

System Information	
Router Name	Balance_09DC
Model	Peplink Balance 2500
Hardware Revision	1
Serial Number	182C-124B-09DC
Firmware	6.1.2 build 1159
PepVPN Version	3.0.0
Modem Support Version	1015 ( <a href="#">Modem Support List</a> )
Host Name	balance-09dc
Uptime	11 days 10 hours 23 minutes
System Time	Tue Jul 01 18:48:16 WET 2014
Diagnostic Report	<a href="#">Download</a>
Remote Assistance	<a href="#">Turn on</a>

Interface	MAC Address
LAN	10:56:CA:60:34:B0
WAN 1	10:56:CA:60:34:B1
WAN 2	10:56:CA:60:34:B2
WAN 3	10:56:CA:60:34:B3
WAN 4	10:56:CA:60:34:B4
WAN 5	10:56:CA:60:34:B5
WAN 6	10:56:CA:60:34:B6
WAN 7	10:56:CA:60:34:B7
WAN 8	10:56:CA:60:34:B8
WAN 9	10:56:CA:60:34:B9
WAN 10	10:56:CA:60:34:BA
WAN 11	10:56:CA:60:34:BB
WAN 12	10:56:CA:60:34:BC

System Information	
<b>Router Name</b>	This is the name specified in the <b>Router Name</b> field located at <b>System&gt;Admin Security</b> .
<b>Model</b>	This shows the model name and number of this device.
<b>Hardware Revision</b>	This shows the hardware version of this device.
<b>Serial Number</b>	This shows the serial number of this device.
<b>Firmware</b>	This shows the firmware version this device is currently running.
<b>Uptime</b>	This shows the length of time since the device has been rebooted.
<b>System Time</b>	This shows the current system time.
<b>Diagnostic Report</b>	The <b>Download</b> link is for exporting a diagnostic report file required for system investigation.
<b>Remote Assistance</b>	Click <b>Turn on</b> to enable remote assistance.

The second table shows the MAC address of each LAN/WAN interface connected.

Important Note
If you encounter issues and would like to contact the Peplink Support Team ( <a href="http://www.peplink.com/contact/">http://www.peplink.com/contact/</a> ), please download the diagnostic report file and attach it along with a description of your issue. In Firmware 5.1 or before, the diagnostic report file can be obtained at <b>System&gt;Reboot</b> .

## 26.2 Active Sessions

Information on active sessions can be found at **Status>Active Sessions>Overview**.

Overview Search

Session data captured within one minute. [Refresh](#)

Service	Inbound Sessions	Outbound Sessions
<a href="#">AIM/ICQ</a>	0	1
<a href="#">Bittorrent</a>	0	32
<a href="#">DNS</a>	0	51
<a href="#">Flash</a>	0	1
<a href="#">HTTPS</a>	0	76
<a href="#">Jabber</a>	0	5
<a href="#">MSN</a>	0	11
<a href="#">NTP</a>	0	4
<a href="#">QQ</a>	0	1
<a href="#">Remote Desktop</a>	0	3
<a href="#">SSH</a>	0	12
<a href="#">SSL</a>	0	64
<a href="#">XMPP</a>	0	4
<a href="#">Yahoo</a>	0	1

Interface	Inbound Sessions	Outbound Sessions
<a href="#">WAN1</a>	0	219
<a href="#">WAN2</a>	0	0
<a href="#">WAN3</a>	0	0
<a href="#">Mobile Internet</a>	0	0

**Top Clients**

Client IP Address	Total Sessions
10.9.66.66	1069
10.9.98.144	147
10.9.2.18	63
10.9.66.14	56
10.9.2.26	33

This screen displays the number of sessions initiated by each application. Click on each service listing for additional information. This screen also indicates the number of sessions initiated by each WAN port. Finally, you can see which clients are initiating the most sessions.

In addition, you can also perform a filtered search for specific sessions. You can filter by subnet, port, protocol, and interface. To perform a search, navigate to **Status>Active Sessions>Search**.

Overview Search

Session data captured 1 min ago. [Refresh](#)

IP / Subnet	Source or Destination	/ 255.255.255.255 (/32)
Port	Source or Destination	
Protocol / Service	SSL	
Interface	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 WAN 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 WAN 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 WAN 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 WAN 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 WAN 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 6 WAN 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 7 WAN 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 8 WAN 8 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 WAN 9 <input type="checkbox"/> 10 WAN 10 <input type="checkbox"/> 11 WAN 11 <input type="checkbox"/> 12 WAN 12 <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet	

**Outbound**

Protocol	Source IP	Destination IP	Service	Interface	Idle Time
No sessions					

Total searched results: 0

**Inbound**

Protocol	Source IP	Destination IP	Service	Interface	Idle Time
No sessions					

Total searched results: 0

**Transit**

Protocol	Source IP	Destination IP	Service	Interface	Idle Time
No sessions					

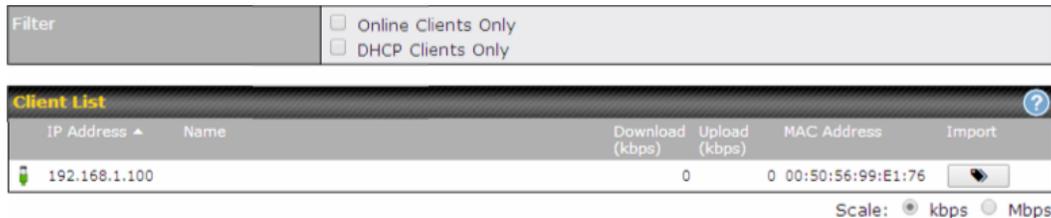
Total searched results: 0

This **Active Sessions** section displays the active inbound / outbound sessions of each WAN connection on the Peplink Balance. A filter is available to help sort out the active session information. Enter a keyword in the field or check one of the WAN connection boxes for filtering.

## 26.3 Client List

The client list table is located at **Status>Client List**. It lists DHCP and online client IP addresses, names (retrieved from the DHCP reservation table or defined by users), current download and upload rate, and MAC address.

Clients can be imported into the DHCP reservation table by clicking the  button on the right. Further update the record after the import by going to **Network>LAN**.

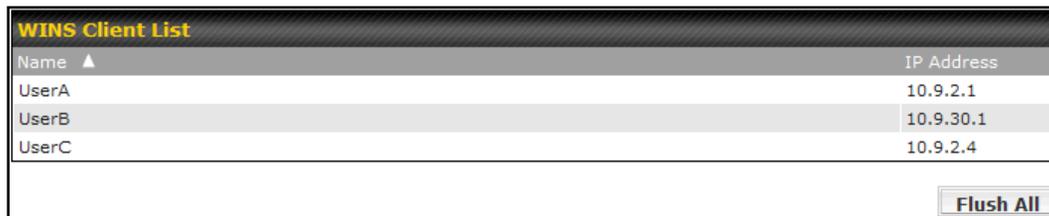


The screenshot shows a web interface for the Client List. At the top, there is a 'Filter' section with two checkboxes: 'Online Clients Only' and 'DHCP Clients Only'. Below this is a table titled 'Client List' with a help icon. The table has columns for 'IP Address', 'Name', 'Download (kbps)', 'Upload (kbps)', 'MAC Address', and 'Import'. A single row is visible with the IP address '192.168.1.100', a download rate of '0', an upload rate of '0', and a MAC address of '00:50:56:99:E1:76'. An 'Import' button is located to the right of the row. Below the table, there is a 'Scale' section with radio buttons for 'kbps' (selected) and 'Mbps'.

If the PPTP server (see **Section 22.2**), SpeedFusion™ (see **Section 12.1**), or AP controller (see **Section 18**) is enabled, you may see the corresponding connection name listed in the **Name** field.

## 26.4 WINS Client

The WINS client list table is located at **Status>WINS Client**.



The screenshot shows a web interface for the WINS Client List. It features a table titled 'WINS Client List' with columns for 'Name' and 'IP Address'. The table contains three rows: 'UserA' with IP '10.9.2.1', 'UserB' with IP '10.9.30.1', and 'UserC' with IP '10.9.2.4'. A 'Flush All' button is located at the bottom right of the table.

The WINS client table lists the IP addresses and names of WINS clients. This option will only be available when you have enabled the WINS server (see section 0). The names of clients retrieved will be automatically matched into the Client List (see previous section). Click **Flush All** to flush all WINS client records.

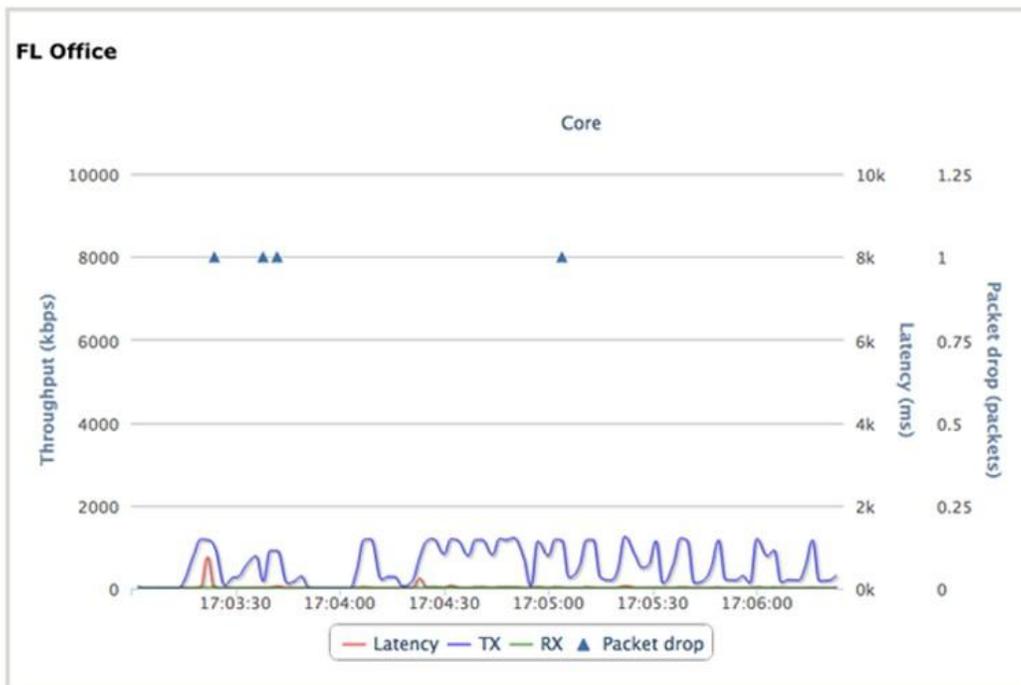
## 26.5 SpeedFusion™ Status

Current SpeedFusion™ status information is located at **Status>SpeedFusion™**. Details about SpeedFusion™ connection peers appears as below:

PepVPN with SpeedFusion™	
Profile	Remote Networks
NY Office	192.168.3.0/24
FL Office	192.168.50.0/24

Click on the corresponding peer name to explore the WAN connection(s) status and subnet information of each VPN peer.

SpeedFusion™					
Profile	Remote Networks				
FL Office	192.168.198.0/24				
WAN1		Rx: 0 kbps	Tx: 0 kbps	Drop rate: 0.00/s	Latency: 0ms
WAN4		Rx: 1 kbps	Tx: 1 kbps	Drop rate: 0.00/s	Latency: 12ms
Total		Rx: 1 kbps	Tx: 1 kbps	Drop rate: 0.00/s	
NY Office	192.168.3.0/24				
WAN1		Rx: 0 kbps	Tx: 0 kbps	Drop rate: 0.00/s	Latency: 0ms
WAN4		Rx: 1 kbps	Tx: 1 kbps	Drop rate: 0.00/s	Latency: 1ms
Total		Rx: 1 kbps	Tx: 1 kbps	Drop rate: 0.00/s	



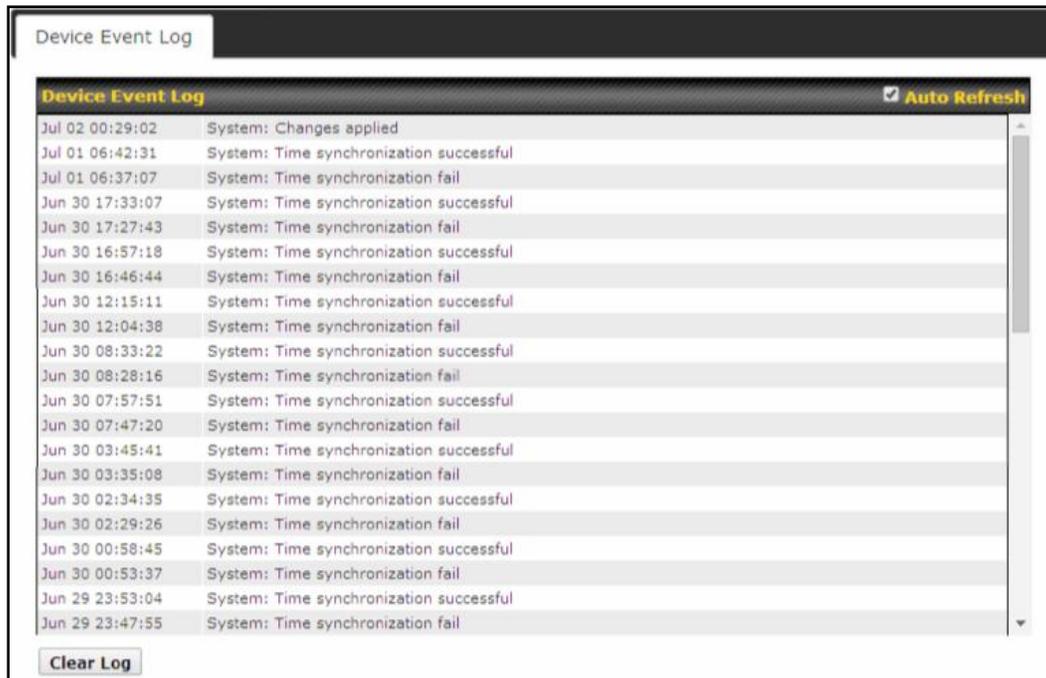
## 26.6 OSPF & RIPv2

Information on OSPF and RIPv2 routing setup can be found at **Status>OSPF & RIPv2**.

## 26.7 Event Log

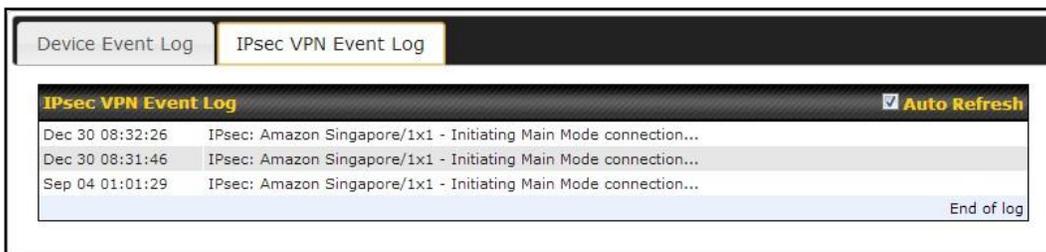
Event log information is located at **Status>Event Log**.

### 26.7.1 Device Event Log



The log section displays a list of events that has taken place on the Peplink Balance unit. Check **Auto Refresh** to refresh log entries automatically. Click the **Clear Log** button to clear the log.

### 26.7.2 IPsec Event Log



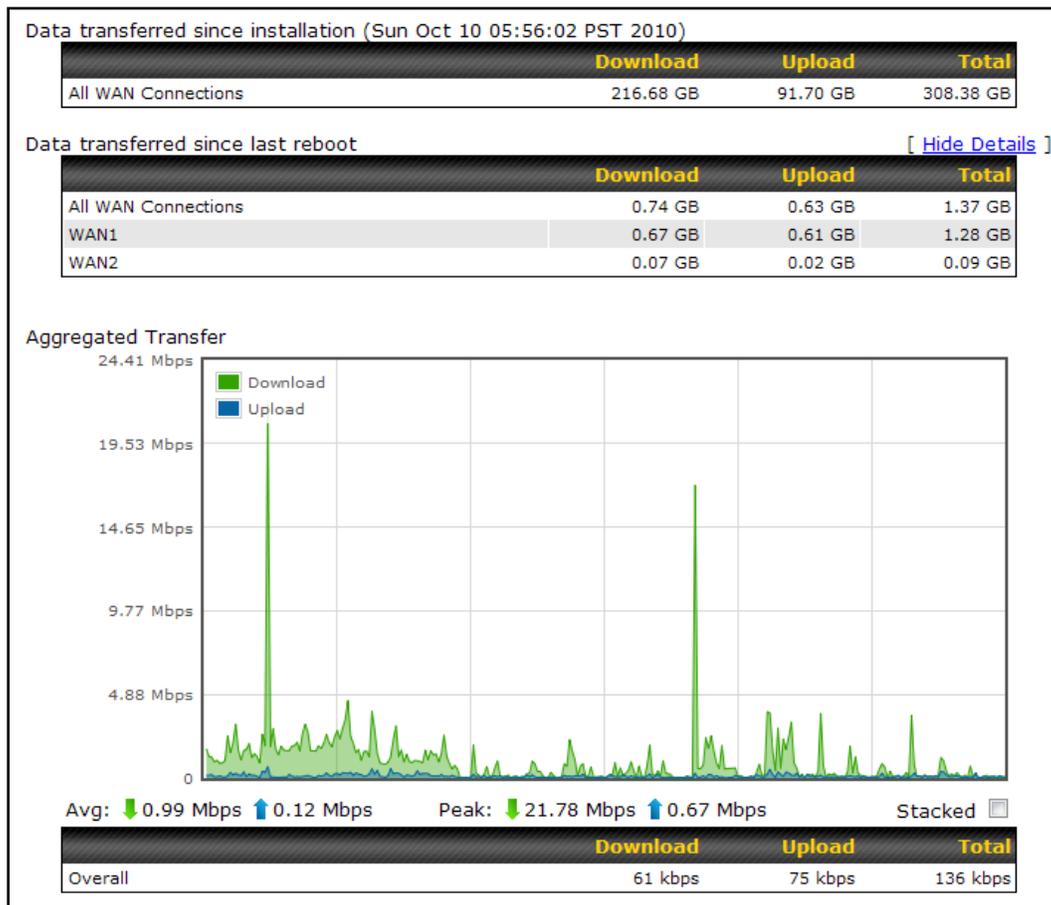
This section displays a list of events that has taken place within an IPsec VPN connection. Check the box next to **Auto Refresh** and the log will be refreshed automatically. For an AP event log, navigate to **AP>Info**.

## 26.8 Bandwidth

This section shows the bandwidth usage statistics, located at **Status>Bandwidth**. Bandwidth usage at the LAN while the device is switched off (e.g., LAN bypass) is neither recorded nor shown.

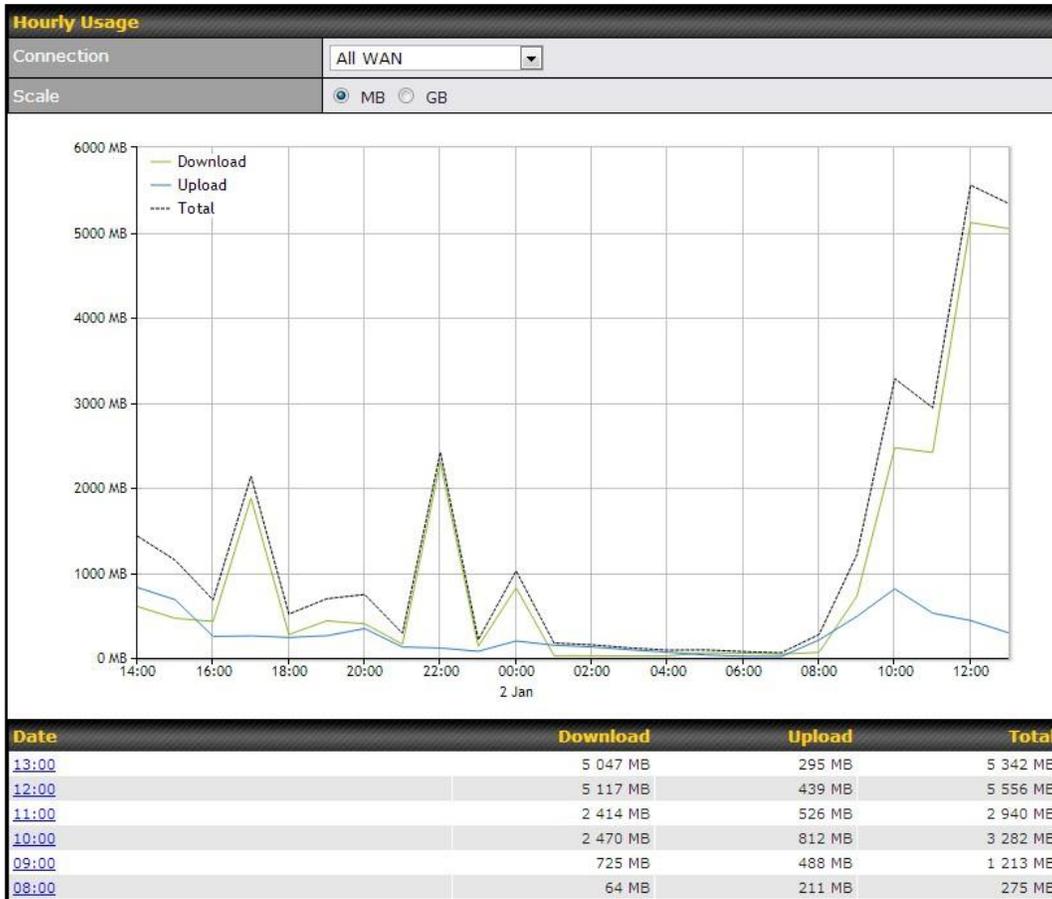
### 26.8.1 Real-Time

The **Data transferred since installation** table indicates how much network traffic has been processed by the device since the first bootup. The **Data transferred since last reboot** table indicates how much network traffic has been processed by the device since the last bootup.



### 26.8.2 Hourly

This page shows the hourly bandwidth usage for all WAN connections, with the option of viewing each individual connection. Select the desired connection to check from the drop-down menu.

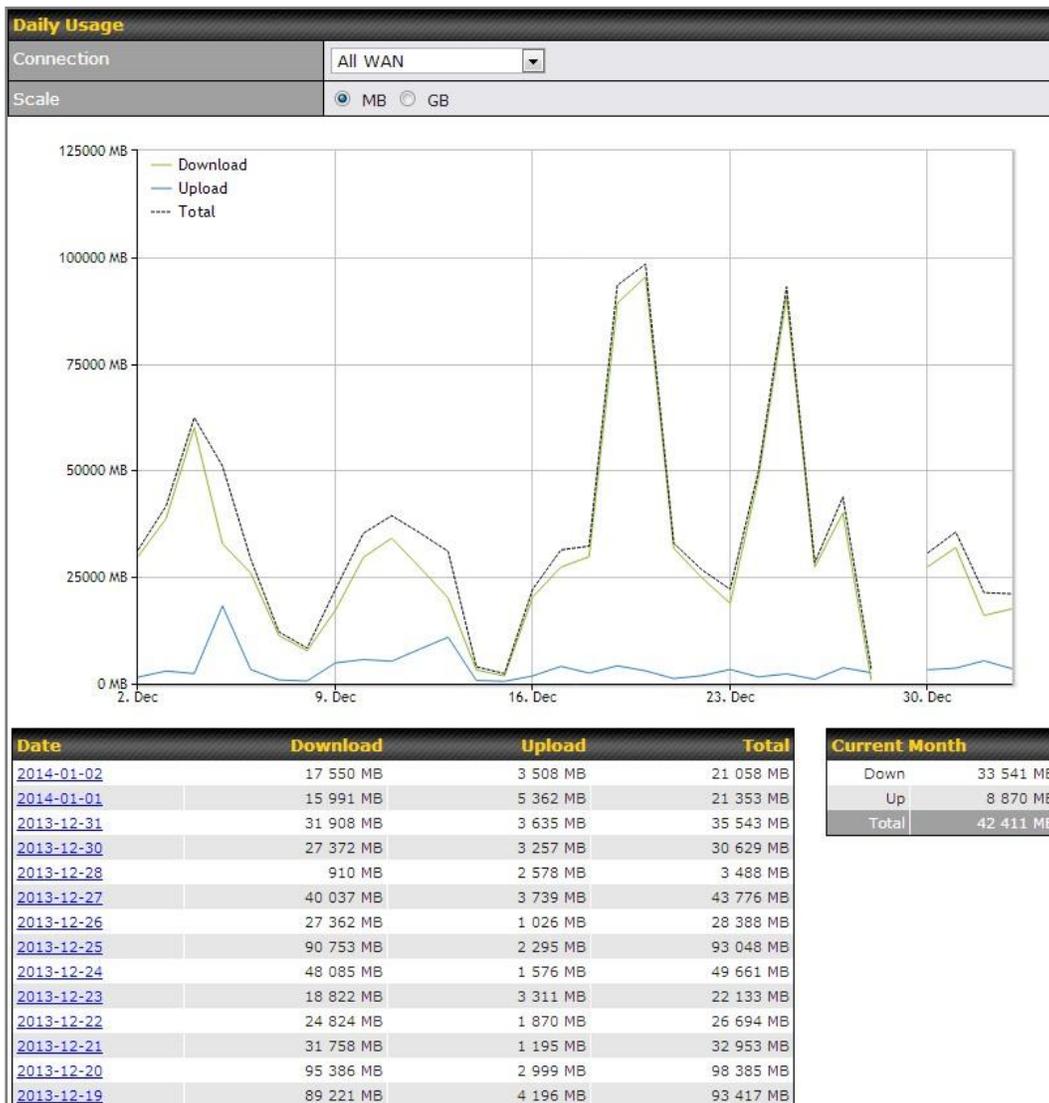


### 26.8.3 Daily

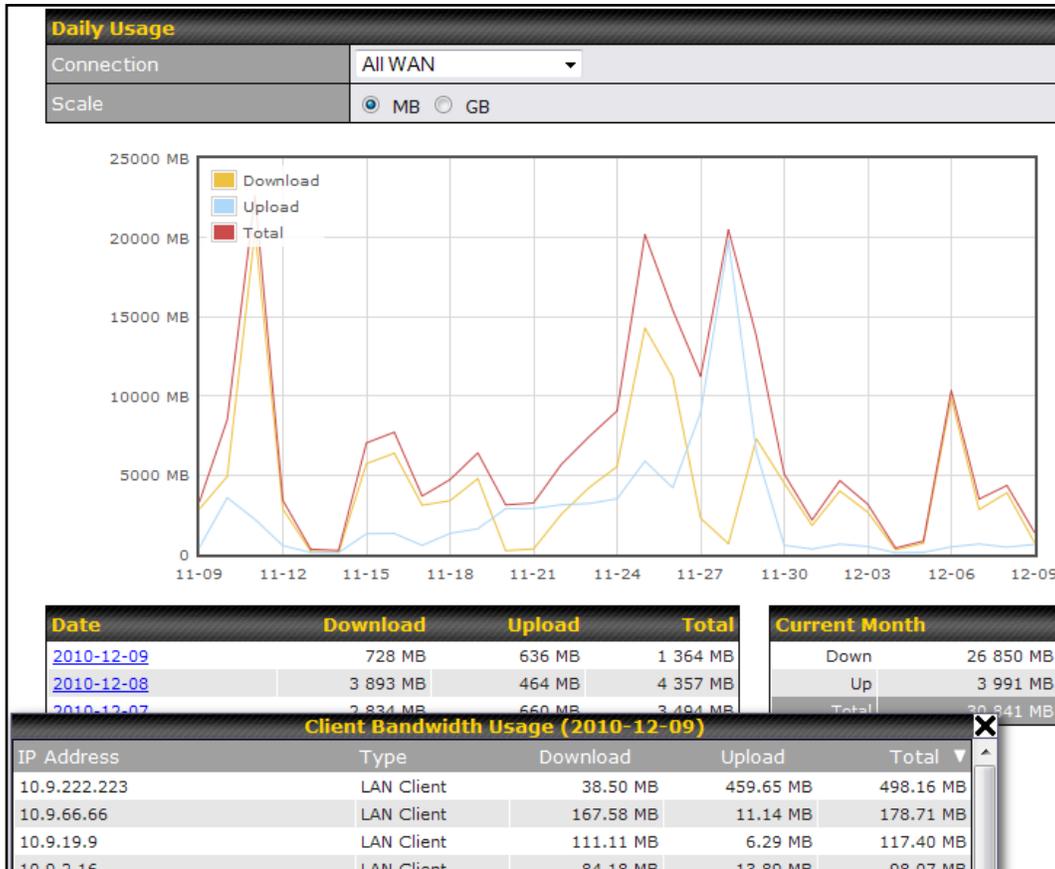
This page shows the daily bandwidth usage for all WAN connections, with the option of viewing each individual connection.

Select the connection to check from the drop-down menu. If you have enabled the **Bandwidth Monitoring** feature as shown in **Section 12.4**, the **Current Billing Cycle** table for that WAN connection will be displayed.

Click on a date to view the client bandwidth usage of that specific date. This feature is not available if you have selected to view the bandwidth usage of only a particular WAN connection. The scale of the graph can be set to display megabytes (**MB**) or gigabytes (**GB**).



Status

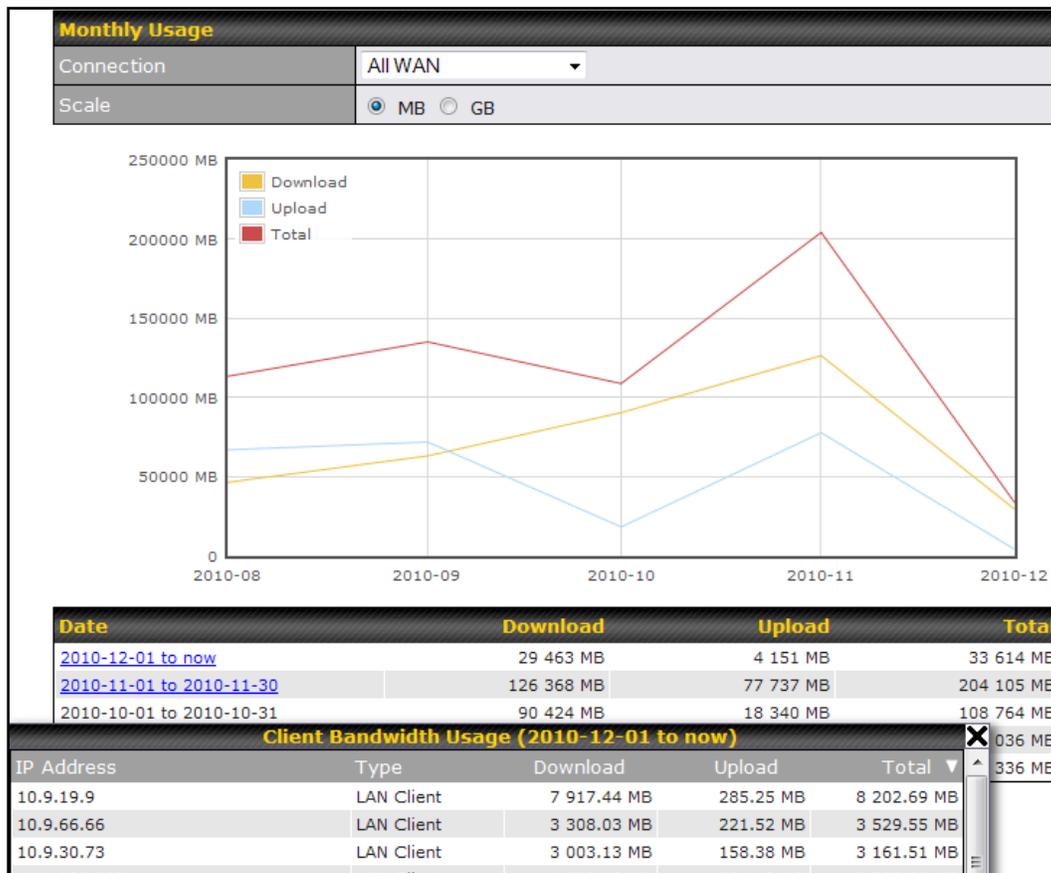


Click on a specific date to receive a breakdown of all client usage for that date.

### 26.8.4 Monthly

This page shows the monthly bandwidth usage for each WAN connection. If you have enabled **Bandwidth Monitoring** feature as shown in **Section 12.4**, you can check the usage of each particular connection and view the information by **Billing Cycle** or by **Calendar Month**.

Click the first two rows to view the client bandwidth usage in the last two months. This feature is not available if you have chosen to view the bandwidth of an individual WAN connection. The scale of the graph can be set to display megabytes (**MB**) or gigabytes (**GB**).



Click on a specific month to receive a breakdown of all client usage for that month.

## Appendix A. Restoration of Factory Defaults

To restore the factory default settings on a Peplink Balance unit, perform the following:

**For Balance 20/30/30 LTE/50/210/310:**

1. Locate the reset button on the Peplink Balance unit.
2. With a paper clip, press and keep the reset button pressed for at least 10 seconds, until the unit reboots itself.

**For Balance 305/380/580/710/1350/2500/MediaFast 200 and 500:**

- Use the buttons on front panel to control the LCD menu to go to **Maintenance>Factory Defaults**, and then choose **Yes** to confirm.

Afterwards, the factory default settings will be restored.

### Important Note

All user settings will be lost after restoring the factory default settings. Regular backup of configuration parameters is strongly recommended.

## Appendix B. Routing under DHCP, Static IP, and PPPoE

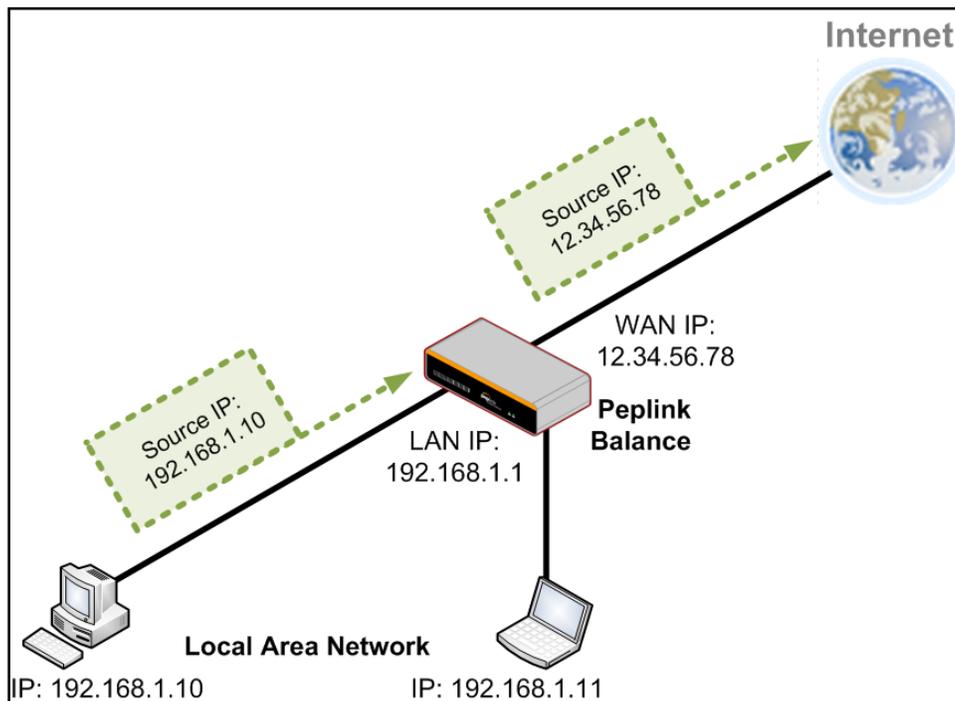
The information in this appendix applies only to situations where the Peplink Balance operates a WAN connection under DHCP, Static IP, or PPPoE.

### B.1 Routing Via Network Address Translation (NAT)

When the Peplink Balance is operating under NAT mode, the source IP addresses of outgoing IP packets are translated to the WAN IP address of the Peplink Balance. With NAT, all LAN devices share the same WAN IP address to access the Internet (i.e., the WAN IP address of the Peplink Balance).

Operating the Peplink Balance in NAT mode requires only one WAN (Internet) IP address. In addition, operating in NAT mode also has security advantages because LAN devices are hidden behind the Peplink Balance. They are not directly accessible from the Internet and hence less vulnerable to attacks.

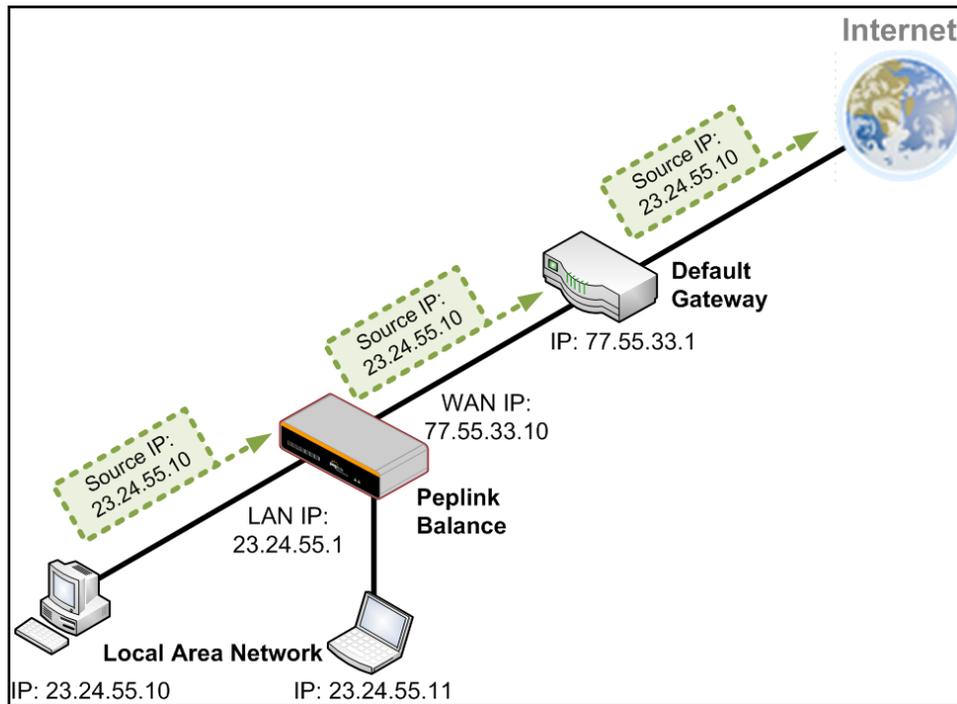
The following figure shows the packet flow in NAT mode:



## B.2 Routing Via IP Forwarding

When the Peplink Balance is operating under IP forwarding mode, the IP addresses of IP packets are unchanged; the Peplink Balance forwards both inbound and outbound IP packets without changing their IP addresses.

The following figure shows the packet flow in IP forwarding mode:



## **Appendix C. Case Studies**

### **C.1 Performance Optimization**

#### **C.1.1 Scenario**

In this scenario, email and web browsing are the two main Internet services used by LAN users.

The mail server is external to the network. The connections are ADSL (WAN1, with slow uplink and fast downlink) and Metro Ethernet (WAN2, symmetric).

#### **C.1.2 Solution**

For optimal performance with this configuration, individually set the WAN load balance according to the characteristics of each service.

- Web browsing mainly downloads data; sending e-mails mainly consumes upload bandwidth.
- Both connections offer good download speeds; WAN2 offers good upload speeds.
- Define WAN1 and WAN2's inbound and outbound bandwidths to be 3M/512k and 4M/4M, respectively. This will ensure that outbound traffic is more likely to be routed through WAN2.
- For HTTP, set the weight to 3:4.
- For SMTP, set the weight to 1:8, such that users will have a greater chance to be routed via WAN2 when sending e-mail.

### C.1.3 Settings

1. Add a new outbound traffic rule for HTTP.
2. Add a new outbound traffic rule for SMTP.

In general, to add a new outbound traffic rule, navigate to **Network>Outbound Policy**.



Click here and select **Managed by Custom Rules**

Service	Algorithm	Source	Destination	Protocol / Port	
HTTPS_Persistence	Persistence (Src) (Auto)	Any	Any	TCP 443	X
Default			(Auto)		

Click **Add Rule** to add a new load distribution rule.

Settings for HTTP:

### Add a New Custom Rule ✕

Service Name *	SMTP
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Source	Any
Destination	Any
Protocol	TCP ← HTTP
Port *	Single Port Port: 80
Algorithm	Weighted Balance
Load Distribution Weight	<p>WAN 1 2</p> <p>WAN 2 4</p> <p>WAN 3 0</p> <p>WAN 4 0</p> <p>WAN 5 0</p> <p>WAN 6 0</p> <p>WAN 7 0</p> <p>Mobile Internet 0</p>
Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

Set the weight of WAN1 and WAN2 for HTTP to 3 and 4, respectively.

Save Cancel

Settings for SMTP:

### Add a New Custom Rule ✕

Service Name *	SMTP																
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																
Source	Any																
Destination	Any																
Protocol	TCP ← SMTP																
Port *	Single Port Port: 25																
Algorithm	Weighted Balance																
Load Distribution Weight	<table><tr><td>WAN 1</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>WAN 2</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>WAN 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>WAN 4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>WAN 5</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>WAN 6</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>WAN 7</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Mobile Internet</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	WAN 1	1	WAN 2	8	WAN 3	0	WAN 4	0	WAN 5	0	WAN 6	0	WAN 7	0	Mobile Internet	0
WAN 1	1																
WAN 2	8																
WAN 3	0																
WAN 4	0																
WAN 5	0																
WAN 6	0																
WAN 7	0																
Mobile Internet	0																
Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable																

Save Cancel

Set the weight of WAN1 and WAN2 for SMTP to 1 and 8, respectively.



## C.2 Maintaining the Same IP Address Throughout a Session

### C.2.1 Scenario

Some IP address-sensitive web sites (for example, Internet banking) use both client IP address and cookie matching for session identification. Since load balancing uses different IP addresses, the session is dropped when a mismatched IP is detected, resulting in frequent interruptions while visiting such sites.

### C.2.2 Solution

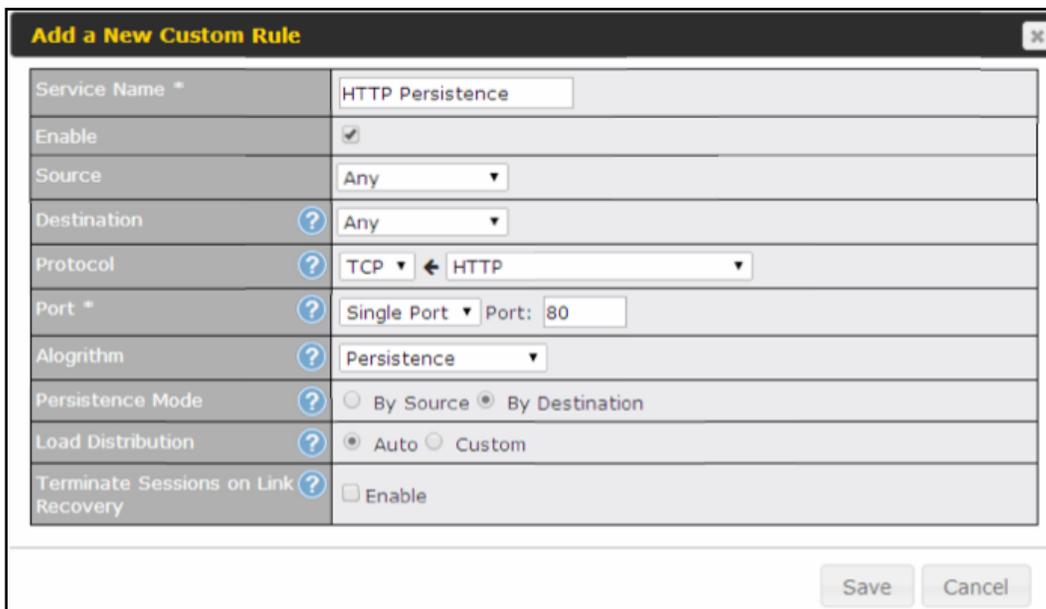
Make use of the persistence functionality of the Peplink Balance. With persistence configured and the **By Destination** option selected, the Peplink Balance will use a consistent WAN connection for source-destination pairs of IP addresses, preventing sessions from being dropped.

With persistence configured and the option **By Source** is selected, the Peplink Balance uses a consistent WAN connection for same-source IP addresses. This option offers higher application compatibility but may inhibit the load balancing function unless there are many clients using the Internet.

### C.2.3 Settings

Set persistence in **Network > Outbound Policy**.

Click **Add Rule**, select **HTTP** (TCP port 80) for web service, and select **Persistence**. Click **Save** and then **Apply Changes**, located at the top right corner, to complete the process.



Add a New Custom Rule	
Service Name *	HTTP Persistence
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Source	Any
Destination	Any
Protocol	TCP ← HTTP
Port *	Single Port Port: 80
Algorithm	Persistence
Persistence Mode	<input type="radio"/> By Source <input checked="" type="radio"/> By Destination
Load Distribution	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> Custom
Terminate Sessions on Link Recovery	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

#### Tip

A network administrator can use the traceroute utility to manually analyze the connection path of a particular WAN connection.

## C.3 Bypassing the Firewall to Access Hosts on LAN

### C.3.1 Scenario

There are times when remote access to computers on the LAN is desirable; for example, when hosting web sites, online businesses, FTP download and upload areas, etc. In such cases, it may be appropriate to create an inbound NAT mapping for the network to allow some hosts on the LAN to be accessible from outside of the firewall.

### C.3.2 Solution

The web admin interface can be used to add an inbound NAT mapping to a host and to bind the host to the WAN connection(s) of your choice. To begin, navigate to **Network>NAT Mappings**.

In this example, the host with an IP address of 192.168.1.102 is bound to 10.90.0.75 of WAN1:

LAN Client(s)	<input type="text" value="IP Address"/>																		
Address	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.102"/>																		
Inbound Mappings	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="2">Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)</td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2</td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3</td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4</td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5</td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6</td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7</td><td></td></tr><tr><td><input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet</td><td></td></tr></tbody></table>	Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)	<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6		<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7		<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet	
Connection / Inbound IP Address(es)																			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)																		
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 2																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 3																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 4																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 5																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 6																			
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN 7																			
<input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Internet																			
Outbound Mappings	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="2">Connection / Outbound IP Address</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>WAN 1</td><td><input type="text" value="10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)"/></td></tr><tr><td>WAN 2</td><td><input type="text" value="10.90.0.76 (Interface IP)"/></td></tr><tr><td>WAN 3</td><td><input type="text" value="Interface IP"/></td></tr><tr><td>WAN 4</td><td><input type="text" value="Interface IP"/></td></tr><tr><td>WAN 5</td><td><input type="text" value="Interface IP"/></td></tr><tr><td>WAN 6</td><td><input type="text" value="Interface IP"/></td></tr><tr><td>WAN 7</td><td><input type="text" value="Interface IP"/></td></tr><tr><td>Mobile Internet</td><td><input type="text" value="Interface IP"/></td></tr></tbody></table>	Connection / Outbound IP Address		WAN 1	<input type="text" value="10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)"/>	WAN 2	<input type="text" value="10.90.0.76 (Interface IP)"/>	WAN 3	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>	WAN 4	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>	WAN 5	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>	WAN 6	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>	WAN 7	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>	Mobile Internet	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>
Connection / Outbound IP Address																			
WAN 1	<input type="text" value="10.90.0.75 (Interface IP)"/>																		
WAN 2	<input type="text" value="10.90.0.76 (Interface IP)"/>																		
WAN 3	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>																		
WAN 4	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>																		
WAN 5	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>																		
WAN 6	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>																		
WAN 7	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>																		
Mobile Internet	<input type="text" value="Interface IP"/>																		

Click **Save** and then **Apply Changes**, located at the top right corner, to complete the process.

## C.4 Inbound Access Restriction

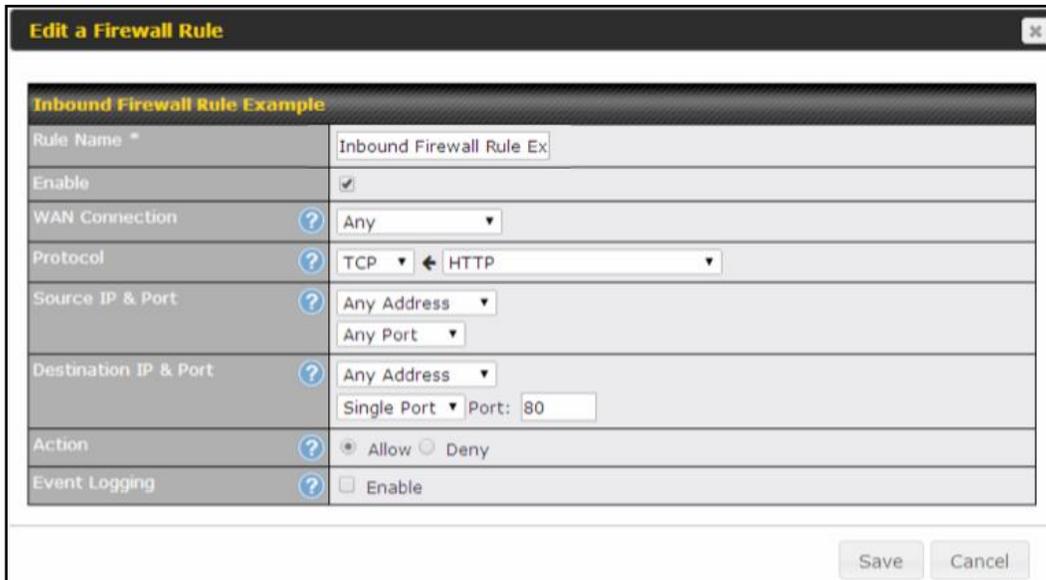
### C.4.1 Scenario

A firewall is required in order to protect the network from potential hacker attacks and other Internet security threats.

### C.4.2 Solution

Firewall functionality is built into the Peplink Balance. By default, inbound access is unrestricted. Enabling a basic level of protection involves setting up firewall rules.

For example, in order to protect your private network from external access, you can set up a firewall rule between the Internet and your private network. To do so, navigate to **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**. Then click the **Add Rule** button in the **Inbound Firewall Rules** table and change the settings according to the following screenshot:



Inbound Firewall Rule Example	
Rule Name *	Inbound Firewall Rule Ex
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WAN Connection	Any
Protocol	TCP ← HTTP
Source IP & Port	Any Address Any Port
Destination IP & Port	Any Address Single Port Port: 80
Action	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Allow <input type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable

After the fields have been entered as in the screenshot, click **Save** to add the rule. Afterwards, change the default inbound rule to **Deny** by clicking the **default** rule in the **Inbound Firewall Rules** table. Click **Apply Changes** on the top right corner to complete the process.

## C.5 Outbound Access Restriction

### C.5.1 Scenario

For security reasons, it may be appropriate to restrict outbound access. For example, you may want to prevent LAN users from using ftp to transfer files to and from the Internet. This can easily be achieved by setting up an outbound firewall rule with the Peplink Balance.

### C.5.2 Solution

To setup a firewall between Internet and private network for outbound access, navigate to **Network>Firewall>Access Rules**. Click the **Add Rule** button in the **Outbound Firewall Rules** table, and then adjust settings according the screenshot:

No FTP Access	
Rule Name *	No FTP Access
Enable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Protocol	TCP HTTP
Source IP & Port	Any Address Any Port
Destination IP & Port	Any Address Single Port Port: 21
Action	<input type="radio"/> Allow <input checked="" type="radio"/> Deny
Event Logging	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable

Save Cancel

After the fields have been entered as in the screenshot, click **Save** to add the rule. Click **Apply Changes** on the top right corner to complete the process.

## Appendix D. Troubleshooting

### Problem 1

Outbound load is only distributed over one WAN connection.

#### Solution

Outbound load balancing can only be distributed traffic evenly between available WAN connections if many outbound connections are made. If there is only one user on the LAN and only one download session is made from his/her browser, the WAN connections cannot be fully utilized.

For a single user, download management applications are recommended. The applications can split a file into pieces and download the pieces simultaneously. Examples include: DownThemAll (Firefox Extension), iGetter (Mac), etc.

If the outbound traffic is going across the SpeedFusion™ tunnel, (i.e., transferring a file to a VPN peer) the bandwidth of all WAN connections will be bonded. In this case, all bandwidth will be utilized and a file will be transferred across all available WAN connections.

For additional details, please refer to this FAQ:

<http://www.peplink.com/knowledgebase/maximizing-your-wan-connections-without-speedfusion/>

### Problem 2

I am using a download manager program (e.g., Download Accelerator Plus, DownThemAll, etc.). Why is the download speed still only that of a single link?

#### Solution

First, check whether all WAN connections are up. Second, ensure your download manager application has split the file into 3 parts or more. It is also possible that all of 2 or even 3 download sessions were being distributed to the same link by chance.

### Problem 3

I am using some websites to lookup my public IP address, e.g., [www.whatismyip.com](http://www.whatismyip.com). When I press the browser's Refresh button, the server almost always returns the same address. Isn't the IP address supposed to be changing for every refresh?

#### Solution

The web server has enabled the **Keep Alive** function, which ensures that you use the same TCP session to query the server. Try to test with a website that does not enable **Keep Alive**.

For example, try <http://private.dnsstuff.com/tools/aboutyou.ch>. (This third-party web site is provided only for reference. Peplink has no association with the site and does not guarantee the site's validity or availability.)

#### **Problem 4**

What can I do if I suspect a problem on my LAN connection?

##### **Solution**

You can test the LAN connection using ping. For example, if you are using DOS/Windows, at the command prompt, type `ping 192.168.1.1`. This pings the Peplink Balance device (provided that Peplink Balance's IP is 192.168.1.1) to test whether the connection to the Peplink Balance is OK.

#### **Problem 5**

What can I do if I suspect a problem on my Internet/WAN connection?

##### **Solution**

You can test the WAN connection using ping, as in the solution to Problem 4. As we want to isolate the problems from the LAN, ping will be performed from the Peplink Balance. By using **Ping/Traceroute** under the **Status** tab of the Peplink Balance, you may be able to find the source of problem.

#### **Problem 6**

When I upload files to a server via FTP, the transfer stalls after a few kilobytes of data are sent. What should I do?

##### **Solution**

The maximum transmission unit (MTU) or MSS setting may need to be adjusted. By default, the MTU is set at 1440. Choose **Auto** for all of your WAN connections. If that does not solve the problem, you can try the MTU 1492 if a connection is DSL. If problem still persists, change the size to progressive smaller values until your problem is resolved (e.g., 1462, 1440, 1420, 1400, etc).

## **Appendix E. Product Specifications**

### **E.1 Peplink Balance 20, 30, 30 LTE, and 50**

#### **Routing**

- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

#### **WAN Support**

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Outbound Link Load Balance

#### **Device Management**

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Configurations Upload and Download

#### **Internet Access Sharing**

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

#### **Security**

- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Compatible with IPsec and PPTP VPNPassthrough
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Intrusion Detection System

#### **Physical Interface**

- Two (Balance 20) / Three (Balance 30, 30 LTE)/ Five (Balance 50) RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3u 10/100/1000M WAN
- Four RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN

#### **Power Specification**

- DC Input 9-16V

#### **Operating Environment**

- Kensington Lock Interface
- Temperature: 0°C - 55°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

## **E.2 Peplink Balance 210 and 310**

### **Routing**

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

### **WAN Support**

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

### **Device Management**

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

### **Internet Access Sharing**

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

### **Security**

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

### **Physical Interface (Balance 210 Hardware Revision 4)**

- Two RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3u 10/100/1000M WAN
- One feature activated RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3u 10/100/1000M WAN
- Seven RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN

### **Physical Interface (Balance 310 Hardware Revision 4)**

- Three RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3u 10/100/1000M WAN
- Seven RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN

### **Power Specification**

- DC Input 12-24V

### **Operating Environment**

- Temperature: 0°C - 65°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

## **E.3 Peplink Balance 380**

### **Routing**

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

### **WAN Support**

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

### **Device Management**

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

### **Internet Access Sharing**

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

### **Security**

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

### **Physical Interface (Balance 380 Hardware Revision 5)**

- Three RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M WAN
- One RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial Port

### **Power Specification**

- AC input 100-240V

### **Operating Environment**

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

## **E.4 Peplink Balance 305**

### **Routing**

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

### **WAN Support**

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

### **Device Management**

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

### **Internet Access Sharing**

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

### **Security**

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

### **Physical Interface**

- Three RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M WAN
- One RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial Port

### **Power Specification**

- AC input 100-240V

### **Operating Environment**

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

## **E.5 Peplink Balance 380**

### **Routing**

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

### **WAN Support**

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

### **Device Management**

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

### **Internet Access Sharing**

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

### **Security**

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

### **Physical Interface (Balance 380 Hardware Revision 5)**

- Three RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M WAN
- One RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial Port

### **Power Specification**

- AC input 100-240V

### **Operating Environment**

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

## **E.6 Peplink Balance 580**

### **Routing**

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

### **WAN Support**

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

### **Device Management**

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

### **Internet Access Sharing**

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

### **Security**

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

### **Physical Interface**

- Five RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M WAN
- One RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100M/1000M LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial (modem / TA) Port
- LAN Bypass from WAN5 to LAN

### **Power Specification**

- AC input 100-240V

### **Operating Environment**

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

### E.7 Peplink Balance 710

#### Routing

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

#### WAN Support

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

#### Device Management

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

#### Internet Access Sharing

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

#### Security

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

#### Physical Interface

- Seven RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M WAN
- One RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial Port

#### Power Specification

- AC input 100-240V

#### Operating Environment

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

### E.8 Peplink Balance 1350

#### Routing

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

#### WAN Support

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

#### Device Management

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

#### Internet Access Sharing

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

#### Security

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

#### Physical Interface

- Thirteen RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M WAN
- One RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial (modem / TA) Port
- LAN Bypass from WAN1 to LAN

#### Power Specification

- AC input 100-240V

#### Operating Environment

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

### E.9 Peplink Balance 2500

#### Routing

- Drop-in Mode and NAT
- Flexible Custom Outbound Routing Policy

#### WAN Support

- DHCP, PPPoE and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

#### Device Management

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

#### Internet Access Sharing

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

#### Security

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

#### Physical Interface

- Twelve RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M WAN
- Eight RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN / Two SFP+ for an IEEE 802.3ae 10G LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial Port

#### Power Specification

- AC input 100-240V

#### Operating Environment

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

### E.10 Peplink MediaFast200/500

#### WAN Support

- DHCP, PPPoE, and Static IP
- Inbound and Outbound Link Load Balance

#### Device Management

- Wizard & Menu Driven Web Management Interface over HTTP / HTTPS
- Remote Reporting and Management
- Bandwidth Usage Monitor
- Configurations Upload and Download

#### Internet Access Sharing

- SUA (Single User Account) / Multi-to-Multi NAT
- NAT supports PAT (Port Address Translation)

#### Security

- PPTP VPN Server
- IPsec (Network-to-Network)
- Rules-based Stateful Firewall, with IP, Protocol, and Port filtering
- Bandwidth Bonding SpeedFusion™
- VPN Encryption: 256-bit AES
- Intrusion Detection System

#### Physical Interface

- Five RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M WAN<sup>1</sup>
- Three RJ-45 for an IEEE 802.3ab 10/100/1000M LAN / Two SFP+ for an IEEE 802.3ae 10G LAN
- One RJ-45 Console / Serial Port
- One USB for 3G/4G LTE Cellular Modem Connection

#### Power Specification

- AC input 100-240V

#### Operating Environment

- Temperature: 0°C - 40°C
- Humidity: 10% - 90% (non-condensing)

<sup>1</sup> MediaFast 500-B WAN ports 1-5 are active by default. Load balancing and/or a SpeedFusion license is required to activate MediaFast 500-A WAN ports 2-

## Appendix F. Declaration

### 1. CAUTION:

**RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.  
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS**

### 2. Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

### 3. Radiation Exposure Statement (for Balance One):

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

Note: The country code selection is for non-US models only and is not available to all US models. Per FCC regulation, all WiFi products marketed in US must fixed to US operation channels only.



What are we doing at the moment?  
Follow us on [Twitter!](#)



Want to know more about us? Add us on [Facebook!](#)  
<http://www.facebook.com/pe>



Difficulties when configuring the device?  
Visit our [YouTube Channel!](#)



Anything want to share with everyone?  
Discuss on [Peplink Forum!](#)

### Contact Us:

#### Sales

<http://www.peplink.com/contact/sales/>

#### Support

<http://www.peplink.com/contact/>

#### Certified Peplink Partner

<http://www.peplink.com/partners/channel-partner-program/>

### Contact Address:

#### United States Office

800 West El Camino  
Real,  
Mountain View  
CA 94040  
United States

#### Italy Office

Via Sismondi 50/3  
20133 Milan  
Italy  
Tel: +39 02 8000 0000

#### South Africa Office

Unit 24, Cambridge  
Office Park, 5 Bauhinia  
Street, Highveld,  
Centurion,  
2071

#### Hong Kong Office

A5, 5/F, HK Spinners  
Industrial Building,  
Phase 6, 481 Castle  
Peak Road, Cheung  
Sha Wan, Hong Kong  
Tel: +852 2990 7600

#### Saudi Arabia Office

3/F, Saudi Business  
Center,  
Jeddah,  
Saudi Arabia